HANDBOOK



CITROËN C3

CITROËN

On-line handbook

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

MyCITROËN

Find your handbook on the CITROËN website, under "MyCITROËN".

This personal and customisable space allows you to establish direct and special contact with the manufacturer.

If the "MyCITROËN" function is not available on the CITROËN public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:
http://service.citroen.com/ddb/

Select:
- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

Scan this code for direct access to your handbook.

This handbook has been designed to help to make the most of your C3 in all circumstances and in complete safety.

Take the time to read through it so as to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

This handbook covers all of the variations in equipment available across the whole C3 range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only.

Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical characteristics, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document forms an integral part of your vehicle. Remember to pass it on to the new owner in the event of the sale of the vehicle.

Key

- safety warning
- additional information
- contributes to the protection of the environment
- refer to the page indicated

CITROËN has a presence on every continent,

a complete product range,

bringing together technology and a permanent spirit of innovation,

for a modern and creative approach to mobility.

We thank you and congratulate you on your choice.

At the wheel of your new vehicle,

getting to know each system,

each control, each setting,

makes your trips, your journeys

more comfortable and more enjoyable.

Happy motoring!

Overview

Eco-driving

Monitoring 1

Instrument panels 10
Indicator and warning lamps 12
Adjustment buttons 28
Trip computer 30

Multifunction screens 2

Monochrome screen A 34
Monochrome screen C 37
Touch screen tablet 40

Comfort 3

Ventilation 45
Heating 47
Manual air conditioning 47
Front demist - defrost 49
Digital air conditioning 50
Rear screen demist - defrost 52
Scented air freshener 53
Front seats 54
Rear seats 56
Mirrors 57
Steering wheel adjustment 58
Audio pre-equipment 59
Accessories 61

Access 4

Remote control key 63
Alarm 67
Window controls 69
Doors 71
Boot 74

Visibility 5

Lighting controls 75
LED daytime running lamps 79
Headlamp adjustment 79
Wiper controls 80
Courtesy lamps 83
Interior mood lighting 84
Boot lamp 84

Fittings 6

Interior fittings 85
Boot fittings 90

Child safety 7

Child seats 92
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 95
ISOFIX child seats 101
Electric child lock 105

Safety 8

Direction indicators 106
Hazard warning lamps 106
Horn 107
Emergency or assistance call 107
Under-inflation detection 108
Braking assistance systems 112
Trajectory control systems 113
Front seat belts 114
Airbags 116

Driving 9

Driving recommendations 120
Starting-switching off the engine 121
Parking brake 124
6-speed manual gearbox 124
Electronic gearbox (ETG) 125
Automatic gearbox 130
Gear efficiency indicator 134
Stop & Start 135
Hill start assist 138
Speed limiter 139
Cruise control 141
Rear parking sensors 143
Reversing camera 145

Checks 10

Bonnet 147
Petrol engines 148
Diesel engines 149
Checking levels 150
Checks 153

Practical information 11

Fuel tank 155
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 157
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 158
AdBlue® additive and SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel) 159
Temporary puncture repair kit 169
Changing a wheel 174
Changing a bulb 181
Changing a fuse 188
Changing a wiper blade 195
Battery 196
Energy economy mode 199
Snow chains 200
Towing the vehicle 201
Towing a trailer 203

Technical data 12

Petrol engines 205
Petrol weights 207
LPG engines 209
LPG weights 210
Diesel engines 211
Diesel weights 213
Dimensions 215
Identification markings 216

Audio and telematics

Emergency or assistance 217
7-inch touch screen tablet 219
Audio system 281

Visual search

Alphabetical index

Exterior

Zenith windscreen

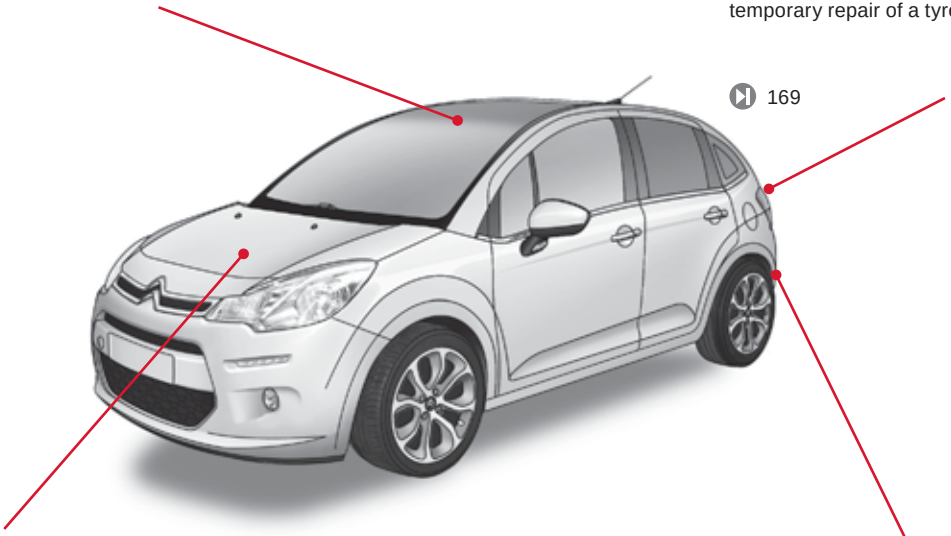
This large windscreen provides incomparable visibility and light in the passenger compartment.

86

Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit is a complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, for the temporary repair of a tyre.

169



Stop & Start

This system puts the engine temporarily into standby during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc...). The engine restarts as soon as you want to move off. The Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and the noise level when stationary.

135

Rear parking sensors / reversing camera

These systems detect and warn you of any obstacle located behind the vehicle.

143 / 145

Interior

Interior mood lighting

This subdued passenger compartment lighting improves visibility inside the vehicle in low lighting conditions. It comprises several lamps, located in the automatic day/night mirror support and in the lower dashboard storage compartment.

84

Scented air freshener

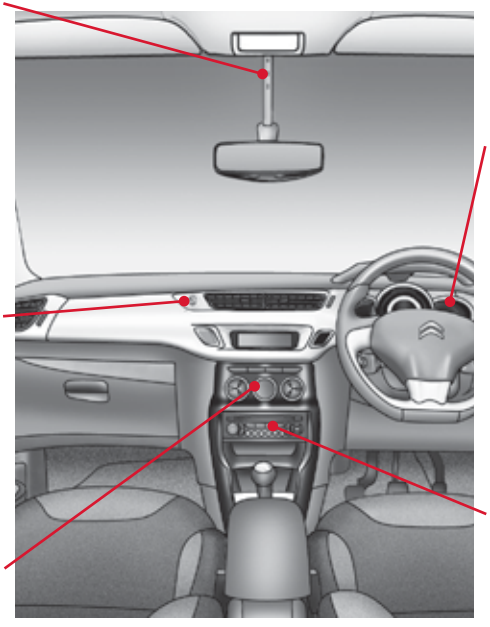
The scented air freshener diffuses the selected fragrance throughout the passenger compartment from its location in the ventilation system.

53

Digital air conditioning

After setting the desired level of comfort, the system then automatically controls this level according to the ambient conditions.

50



Gear efficiency indicator

Depending on the driving conditions and your style of driving, this system may suggest when to change up to reduce your fuel consumption.

134

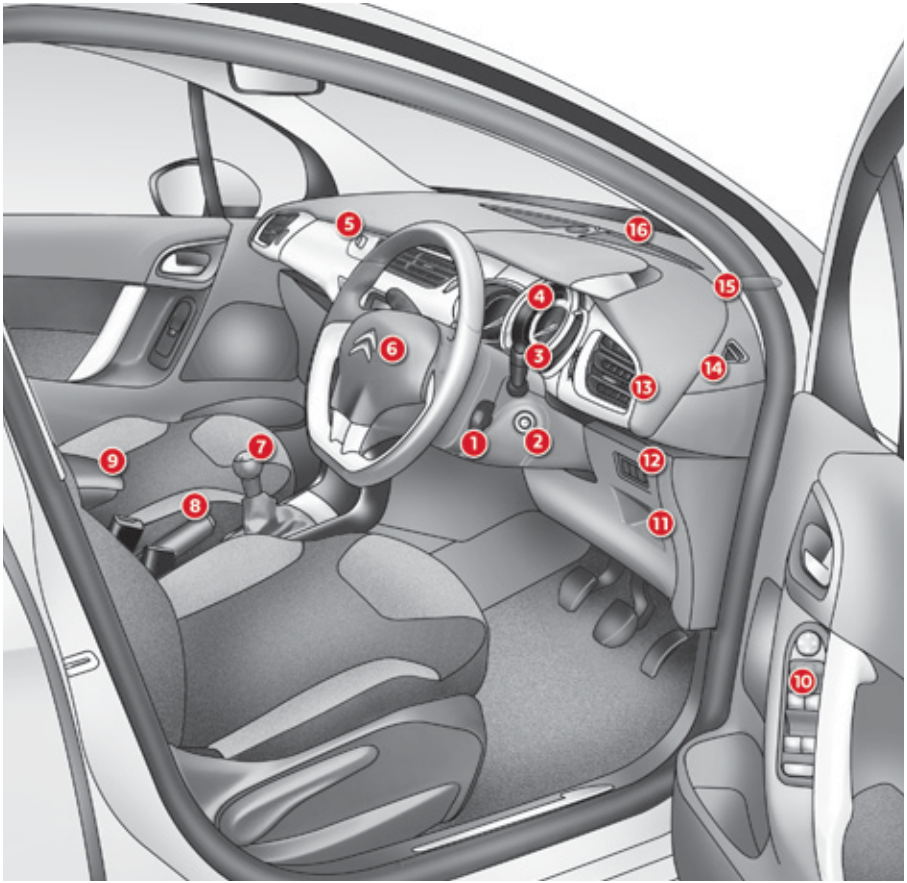
Audio and communication systems

These systems benefit from the latest technology: MP3 compatible Audio system, USB port, Bluetooth hands-free system, Touch screen tablet with colour screen, auxiliary inputs, Hi-Fi audio system.

219

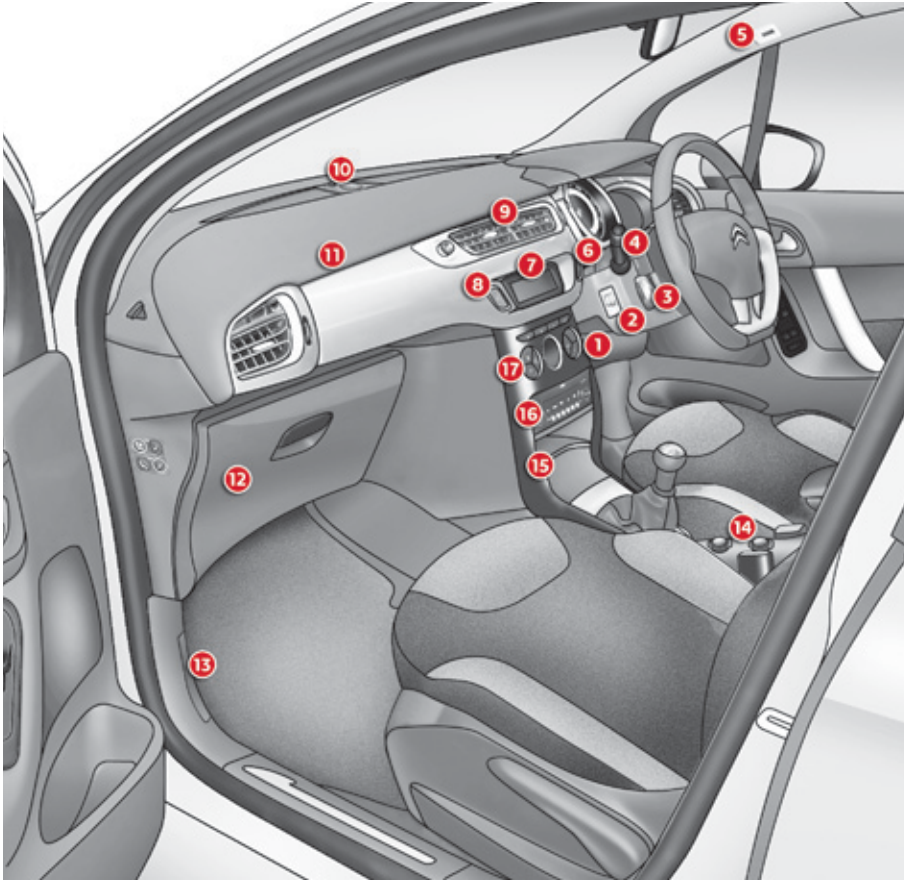
Instruments and controls

1. Audio equipment steering mounted controls.
2. Steering lock and ignition.
3. Wipers / screenwash / trip computer control stalk.
4. Instrument panel.
5. Scented air freshener.
6. Driver's airbag.
   Horn.
7. Gear lever.
8. Parking brake.
9. Central armrest with storage.
10. Door mirror controls.
    Electric window controls.
    Rear doors and electric windows deactivation control.
11. Storage compartment.
12. Electric child lock button or
    Alarm button.
    Electronic stability programme button (DSC/ASR).
    Stop & Start deactivation button.
13. Side adjustable air vent.
14. Front door window demisting/defrosting vent.
15. Speaker (tweeter).
16. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vent.



Instruments and controls

1. Steering wheel adjustment control.
2. Headlamp height adjustment.
3. Cruise control / speed limiter controls.
4. Lighting and direction indicator control stalk.
5. Microphone.
6. Central locking button.
7. Multifunction screen or Touch screen tablet.
8. Hazard warning lamps button.
9. Central adjustable air vents.
10. Sunshine sensor
    Hi-Fi audio system central speaker.
11. Passenger's airbag.
12. Glove box / Passenger's airbag deactivation / Fusebox.
13. Bonnet release lever.
14. 12 V accessory socket
    USB port / auxiliary socket.
15. Upper and lower storage.
16. Audio system or switch panel.
17. Heating / air conditioning controls.



Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an electronic or automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also helps reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).
Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting; go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrous oxides brought back to the legal level.

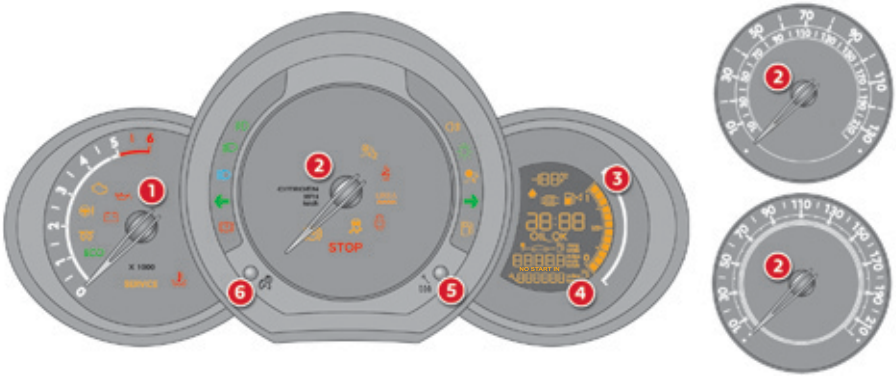
When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Instrument panels - manual gearbox

Panel grouping together the vehicle operation indication dials and warning lamps.

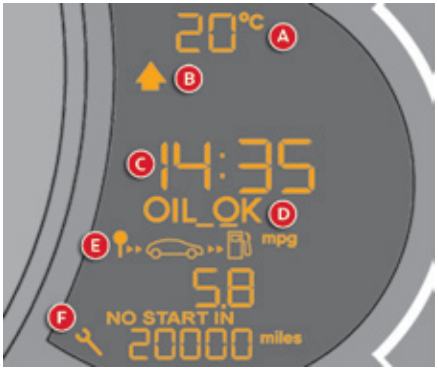
Dials



1. **Rev counter.**
   Indicates the speed of rotation of the engine (x 1 000 rpm).
2. **Speedometer.**
   Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (mph or km/h).
3. **Fuel gauge.**
   Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
4. **Screen.**
5. **Display management button.**
   Servicing information.
   Adjust the time and choose units.
   Reset the service indicator.
6. **Instrument panel lighting button.**
   Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls.

For more information, refer to the section on the button or function and its associated display.

Screen

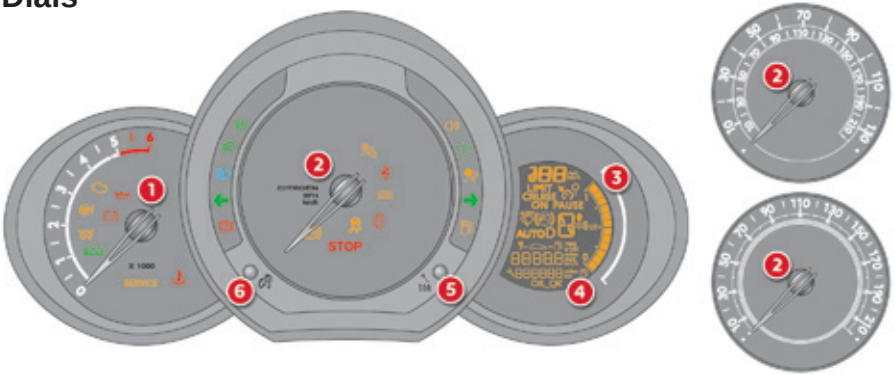


A. **Ambient temperature.**
   (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit)
B. **Gear efficiency indicator.**
C. **Time.**
D. **Engine oil level indicator.**
   Appears a few seconds after switching on the ignition, then disappears.
E. **Trip computer.**
F. **Service indicator** or **Range related to the AdBlue additive and the SCR system** (miles or km), then, **total mileage.**
   These functions are displayed successively when switching on the ignition.

Instrument panels - electronic or automatic gearboxes

Panel grouping together the vehicle operation indication dials and warning lamps. Depending on the version, the instrument panel may have permanent back-lighting.

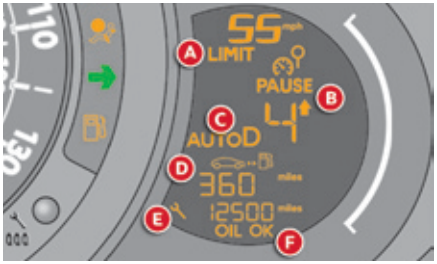
Dials



1. **Rev counter.**
   Indicates the speed of rotation of the engine (x 1 000 rpm).
2. **Speedometer.**
   Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (mph or km/h).
3. **Fuel gauge.**
   Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
4. **Screen.**
5. **Display management button.**
   Alternates display between range and trip mileage recorder.
   Servicing information.
   Resets the selected function to zero (trip distance recorder or service indicator).
6. **Instrument panel lighting button.**
   Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls.

> For more information, refer to the section on the button or function and its associated display.

Screen



- **A. Speed limiter**
  (mph or km/h) or
  Cruise control.
- **B. Gear efficiency indicator.**
- **C. Electronic or automatic gearbox information.**
- **D. Range**
  (miles or km) or
  Trip mileage recorder.
- **E. Service indicator**
  (miles or km), then
  total mileage recorder.
  These two functions are displayed successively when switching on the ignition.
- **F. Engine oil level indicator.**
  Appears a few seconds after switching on the ignition, then disappears.

Indicator and warning lamps

Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation (operation or deactivation indicator lamps) or of the occurrence of a fault (warning lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.
When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.
If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

The illumination of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.
The warning lamps may come on continuously (fixed) or flash.

! Certain warning lamps may come on in one of two different modes. Only by relating the type of illumination to the operating status of the vehicle can it be ascertained whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred.

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Left-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed down.	
	**Right-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed up.	
	**Hazard warning lamps**	flashing with audible signal.	The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated.	The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated indicator lamps flash simultaneously.
	**Sidelamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Dipped beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
	**Main beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	**Front foglamps**	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	**Rear foglamps**	fixed.	The rear foglamps are on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearward to switch off the rear foglamps.
	**Diesel engine pre-heating**	fixed.	The key is at position 2 (ignition on) in the ignition switch.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. The period of illumination of the warning lamp is determined by the ambient conditions (up to about thirty seconds in very low temperatures). If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the warning lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	**Parking brake**	fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Engine coolant temperature**	fixed blue.	On starting the engine, it indicates that the engine is cold.	After a few minutes driving, it swiches off to indicate that the engine temperature is normal. In order to protect your engine, avoid driving too hard until the warning lamp has switched off.
	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on special cases with STOP mode and START mode, refer to the "Stop & Start" section.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Foot on the brake pedal**	fixed.	The brake pedal must be pressed.	With an electronic gearbox, press the brake pedal to start the engine (lever in position **N**). With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, press the brake pedal before releasing the parking brake, to unlock the lever and come out of position **P**. If you wish to release the parking brake without pressing the brake pedal, this warning lamp will remain on.
		flashing.	With an electronic gearbox, if you hold the vehicle on an incline using the accelerator for too long, the clutch overheats.	Use the brake pedal and/or the parking brake.
	**Automatic wiping**	fixed.	The wiper control is pushed downwards.	Automatic front wiping is activated.

Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.
This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed.	The control, located in the glove box, is set to the **OFF** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the operation of the airbags (Airbag warning lamp on).	Set the control to the **ON** position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rearward facing position.
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)**	fixed.	The button, located at the bottom left of the dashboard, is pressed. Its indicator lamp is on. The DSC/ASR is deactivated. DSC: dynamic stability control. ASR: anti-slip regulation.	Press the button to activate the DSC/ASR. Its indicator lamp goes off. The DSC/ASR system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started. If deactivated, the system is reactivated automatically from around 30 mph (50 km/h).

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.

! Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further by reading the associated message in the multifunction screen.
If you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
STOP	STOP	fixed, alone or associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.	Illumination of the warning lamp is associated with a serious braking system or engine coolant temperature problem.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so as the engine may cut out when driving. Park, switch off the ignition and call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
SERVICE	Service	temporarily.	Minor problems have occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the problem by reading the message shown in the screen, such as, for example: - the engine oil level, - the screenwash level, - the remote control battery, - saturation of the particle filter on Diesel vehicles (refer to the "Particle filter (Diesel)" section). For any other faults, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	Major problems have occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the problem by reading the message shown in the screen and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Braking**	fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	The braking system fluid level is too low.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ 		fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamps.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)**	flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
		fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Engine autodiagnosis system**	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Low fuel level**	fixed.	When it first comes on there remains **approximately 5 litres of fuel** in the tank.	You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made. Fuel tank capacity: approximately 50 litres (petrol), 46 litres (Diesel) or 37 litres (LPG); depending on version: approximately 30 litres (petrol or Diesel). Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	**Maximum coolant temperature**	fixed.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.
	**Engine oil pressure**	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Battery charge**	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Door(s) open**	fixed if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door or the boot is still open.	Close the door or boot.
		fixed and accompanied by an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).		
	**Airbags**	temporarily.	This lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Seat belt not fastened / unfastened**	fixed then flashing accompanied by an increasing audible signal.	The driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
	**Power steering**	fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at reduced speed. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Water in Diesel**	fixed.	The Diesel fuel filter contains water.	Risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	**Particle filter (Diesel)**	fixed, accompanied by an audible signal.	This indicates that the particle filter is starting to become saturated.	As soon as driving conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 35 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off (see the "Checks - Particle filter" section).
		fixed, accompanied by an audible signal.	This indicates the low level of the additive reservoir.	Have the reservoir topped up as soon as possible by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (see the "Checks - Additive level" section).
	**Under-inflation**	fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.	Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold. You must reinitialise the system after the adjustment of one or more tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels. For more information, refer to the "Under-inflation detection" section.
+ SERVICE		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The system has fault: the tyre pressures are no longer monitored.	Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
UREA	**AdBlue® additive (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1500 miles (2400 km).	Have the AdBlue® additive tank topped up as soon as possible: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself by referring to the corresponding section.
+ SERVICE		flashing associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 350 miles (600 km).	You must **top-up the** AdBlue® additive tank to **avoid a breakdown**: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself by referring to the corresponding section.
		flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must **top-up the** AdBlue® additive tank: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself by referring to the corresponding section. It is **essential** to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the additive tank.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
UREA + SERVICE + 	**SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 650 miles (1 100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop **without delay**, **to avoid a breakdown**.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you **must** call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Service indicator



System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the next service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset, depending on the distance travelled and the time elapsed since the last service.

i For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the degree of deterioration of the engine oil is also taken into account (depending on the country of sale).

More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.
Example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.
For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total distance.



Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.
For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Service overdue

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.
Example: the service is overdue by 180 miles (300 km).
For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on.**



i For BlueHDi Diesel versions, this alert may also be accompanied by the fixed illumination of the service warning lamp when the ignition is on.

i The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driving conditions.
Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the period since the last service, indicated in the manufacturer's service schedule.
For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the spanner may also be brought on earlier than expected, depending on the degree of deterioration of the engine oil (depending on the country of sale).
The rate of deterioration of the engine oil depends on the driving conditions in which the vehicle is used.



Service indicator zero reset

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.
The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ when the display indicates **"=0"**, release the button; the spanner disappears.

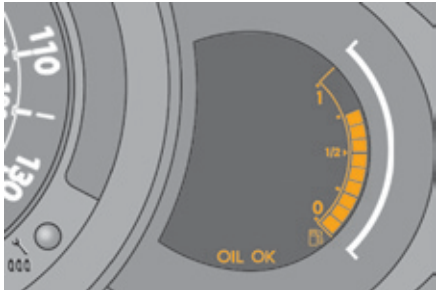
> **i** Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be taken into account.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- ☞ Press the trip distance recorder zero reset button.
  The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator*



On vehicles fitted with an electric oil level indicator, information on the oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.

i The level shown will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Oil level low



This is indicated by the flashing of **"OIL"**, accompanied by illumination of the service warning lamp, an audible signal and a message.
If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to prevent damage to the engine.
Refer to the "Checking levels" section.

Oil level indicator fault



This is signaled by the flashing of **"OIL--"**.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
In the event of a fault with the electric oil level indicator, the engine oil level is no longer monitored.
While the system is faulty, you should check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.
Refer to the "Checking levels" section.

* Depending on version.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

i When travelling abroad, you may have to change the units of distance: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.



Total distance recorder

It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.



Trip distance recorder

It measures the distance travelled since it was reset to zero by the driver.

☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Clock



Adjusting the time - Choice of units

To adjust the time of the clock and choose the units used by the screen, use the right-hand button on the instrument panel, carrying out the operations in the following order:

☞ press the button for more than two seconds: the minutes flash,
☞ press the button to increase the minutes,
☞ press the button for more than two seconds: the hours flash,
☞ press the button to increase the hours,
☞ press the button for more than two seconds: 24H or 12H is displayed,
☞ press the button to select 24H or 12H,
☞ press the button for more than two seconds: °C or °F is displayed,
☞ press the button to select °C or °F,
☞ press the button for more than two seconds to complete the adjustments.

After approximately 30 seconds without any action, the screen returns to the normal display.

Lighting dimmer

System for manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls to suit the ambient light level.



Activation

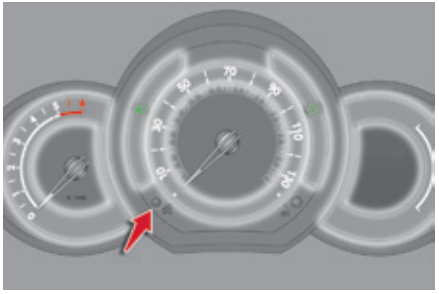
When the lighting is on:

- ☞ press the button to change the brightness of the instruments and controls,
- ☞ when the level of brightness required is reached, release the button.

Deactivation

When the lighting is off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, pressing the button does not have any effect.

Black panel (comfort night driving display)



When driving at night, this function allows certain displays in the instrument panel to be switched off so as to reduce fatigue for the driver.
The essential driving information, such as the speed of the vehicle, warning lamps, cruise control or speed limiter information, remain displayed in the instrument panel.

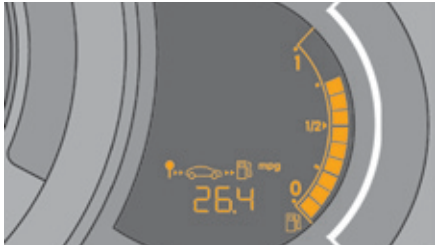
Activation

- ☞ With the lighting on, press the left hand button of the instrument panel several times to progressively reduce the dashboard lighting level.
- ☞ Press the button again to reduce the lighting to the minimum level and switch off the interior mood lighting.
- ☞ Press the button again to activate the black panel.

Trip computer

System that gives you information on the current journey (range, fuel consumption…).

Screen in the instrument panel



Monochrome screen A



* Available only with the monochrome screen A.



Information displays

☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various items of trip computer information in succession.

The trip computer provides the following information:

- range,



- current fuel consumption,



- the Stop & Start time counter*,



- distance travelled,



- average fuel consumption,



- average speed.



☞ The next press then returns you to the normal display.



Zero reset

☞ Press the control for more than two seconds to reset to zero the distance travelled, the average fuel consumption and the average speed.

Monochrome screen C





Information displays

☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various trip computer tabs in succession:



- the current information tab with:
- the range,
- the current fuel consumption,
- the distance remaining to be travelled or the Stop & Start time counter.



- the trip **"1"** tab with:
- the distance travelled,
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed, for the first trip.



- the trip **"2"** tab with:
- the distance travelled,
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed, for the second trip.

☞ Pressing the button again returns you to the normal display.



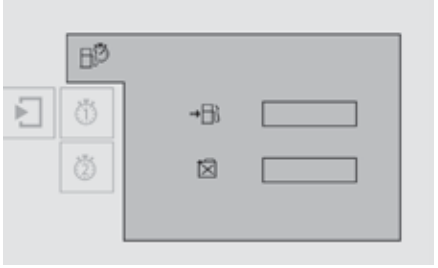
Trip reset

☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper stalk for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Touch screen tablet



Information display

☞ Press **MENU** button, then select "**Driving**" to display the various tabs.

☞ Select the desired tab using your finger.

- The current fuel consumption tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the Stop & Start time counter.

- The trip **"1"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled.
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed, for the first trip.

- The trip **"2"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled.
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed, for the second trip.



Trip reset

☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Trip computer, a few definitions



Range

(miles or km)
The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

i This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

! If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
Calculated over the last few seconds.

i This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Average speed

(mph or km/h)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Distance travelled

(miles or km)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Distance remaining to destination

(miles or km)
This is the distance remaining to be travelled to the final destination. It can be entered by the user.
If the distance is not entered, dashes are displayed in place of the digits.

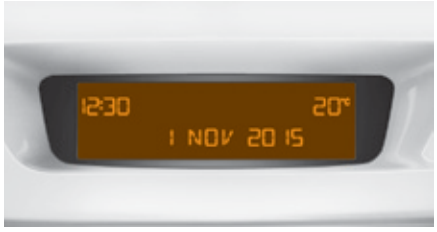


Stop & Start time counter

(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)
If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

Monochrome screen A

Displays in the screen



This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- state of the doors and boot,
- audio sources (radio, CD...),
- trip computer (refer to the "Instruments and controls" section).

Warning messages (e.g.: "Emission control system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Boot open") may appear temporarily. These can be cleared by pressing the **"Back"** button.

Controls



From the control panel of your Audio system, you can:

- press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the **main menu**,
- press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items in the screen,
- press the **"MODE"** button to change the permanent application (date, audio source...),
- press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- press the **"OK"** button to confirm, or
- press the **"Back"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- Press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the **main menu**, then press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the various menus:
  - radio-CD,
  - vehicle configuration,
  - options,
  - display settings,
  - languages,
  - units.
- Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

Radio-CD

With the Audio system switched on, once the "Radio-CD" menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG), or the CD (introscan, shuffle, CD repeat).
For more information on the "Radio-CD" application, refer to the "Audio system" section.

Vehicle configuration



Once the "Vehicle Configuration" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- guide-me-home lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- parking sensors (refer to the "Driving" section).

Using this menu, you can also reinitialise the tyre under-inflation detection system (refer to the "Safety" section).

Options

Once the "Options" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Display settings

Once the "Display settings" menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.



☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change its value.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to switch respectively to the previous or next setting.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to save the change and return to the normal display or press the **"Back"** button to cancel.

Setting the date and time

☞ Press the **MENU** button.

☞ Select "Display settings" using the "▲" or "▼" button.

☞ Press **"OK"** to confirm the selection.

☞ Select the "Year" function using the "▲" or "▼" button.

☞ Press **"OK"** to confirm the selection.

☞ Choose the desired value, using the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button.

☞ Press **"OK"** to confirm the selection.

☞ Repeat the procedure to set the "Month", "Day", "Hours", and "Minutes".

Languages

Once the "Languages" menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display, by choosing a new language from the list offered.

Units

Once the "Units" menu has been selected, you can change the units of the following parameters:

- temperature (°C or °F),
- fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

Once the fuel consumption units have been set to mpg, the information in the instrument panel screen on speed and distance will also be in mph and miles.

For safety reasons, configuration by the driver of the multifunction screen must only be done when stationary.

Monochrome screen C

Displays in the screen



This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- state of doors and boot,
- audio sources (radio, CD, USB port / auxiliary socket etc.),
- trip computer (refer to the "Instruments and controls" section).

Warning messages (E.g.: "Emissions control system faulty") or information messages (E.g.: Automatic headlamps active") may appear temporarily. These can be cleared by pressing the **"Back"** button.

Controls



From your Audio system control panel, you can:

- ☞ press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the **main menu**,
- ☞ press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items in the screen,
- ☞ press the **"MODE"** button to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source ...),
- ☞ press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- ☞ press the **"OK"** button to confirm,

or

- ☞ press the **"Back"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the **main menu**:
  - audio functions,
  - the trip computer,
  - personalisation-configuration,
  - telephone (hands-free kit).
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button.

"Audio functions" menu

With the Audio system switched on, once this menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG, RadioText), the CD (introscan, shuffle, CD repeat) or the MP3 player (USB port / auxiliary socket).
For more information on the "Audio functions" application, refer to the "Audio system" section.

"Trip computer" menu

- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the **general menu**.
- ☞ Press the arrows, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"Trip computer"** menu.



- ☞ In the **"Trip computer"** menu, select one of the following applications:



Alert log

This summarises the active warning messages, displaying them in succession in the multifunction screen.

Status of functions

This summarises the status (active or inactive) of the vehicle's functions.

Enter distance to destination

This allows you to enter an approximate distance until your final destination.

"Personalisation-Configuration" menu



Define the vehicle parameters

Once this menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- wiper linked to reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- guide-me-home lighting and duration (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- parking sensors (refer to the "Driving" section).

Using this menu, you can also reinitialise the tyre under-inflation detection system (refer to the "Safety") section.

Example: setting of the duration of the guide-me-home lighting

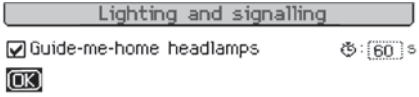
☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the "Guide-me-home headlamps" line.



☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to set the value required (15, 30 or 60 seconds), then press the **"OK"** button to confirm.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm or press the **"Back"** button to cancel.

Display configuration

Once this menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following settings:

- brightness-video setting,
- date and time setting,
- selection of units.

> **i** Once the fuel consumption units have been changed to mpg, the information in the screen relating to speed and distance also changes to mph and miles respectively.

Setting the date and time

☞ Select the **"Set date and time"** function using the "▲" or "▼" button.

☞ Press **"OK"** to confirm the selection.

☞ Adjust the settings one by one using the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button then confirm with **"OK"**.

☞ Then select the **"OK"** box in the screen and confirm.

Choice of language

Once this menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display, by choosing a new language from the list offered.



"Telephone" Menu

With Audio system on, once this menu is selected you can configure your Bluetooth hands-free system (pairing), view the various telephone directories (list of calls, services...) and manage your calls (call, hang up, second call, secret mode...).
For more information on the "Telephone" function, refer to the "Audio system" section.

> **!** For safety reasons, configuration by the driver of the multifunction screen must only be done when stationary.

Touch screen tablet

This system gives access to:
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio and display configuration menus,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
- the display of alert messages,
- the display of ambient temperature (a blue snow flake appears when there is a risk of ice),
- the display of the trip computer.

And, depending on equipment, it allows:
- the display of visual parking sensors information,
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.

! As a safety measure, some functions can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary. When the vehicle moves off, their display is interrupted.

General operation

Recommendations

It is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through lists, moving the map...).
A light wipe is not enough.
The screen does not recognise pressing with more than one finger.
This technology allows use at all temperatures and when wearing gloves.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen tablet.
Do not touch the touch screen tablet with wet hands.
Uses a soft clean cloth to clean it.

Principles

Press the "**MENU**" button for access to the different menus, then press the virtual buttons. Each menu is displayed over one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



Use this button to go to the secondary page.



Use this button to return to the primary page.

i After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.



Use this button for access to additional information and to the settings for certain functions.



Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to quit.

Menus

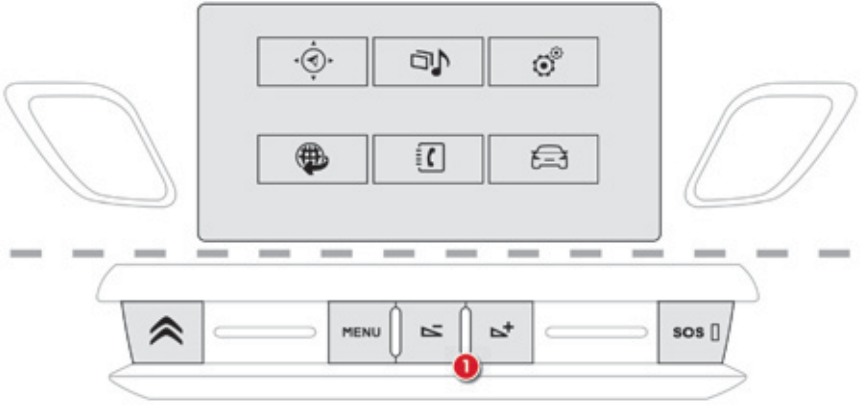
MENU Press this button, then choose the desired menu.

Navigation
Navigation is available depending on country and/or trim level.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Radio Media
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Settings
Allows configuration of the display and the system.
Refer to the corresponding section.

Internet
These services are available depending on country and/or trim level.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.



Telephone
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Driving
Allows access to the trip computer and, depending on version, the adjustment of settings for certain functions.
Refer to the corresponding section.

1. Volume / mute.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

"Driving" menu

The systems with settings that can be adjusted are detailed in the table below.

Button	Corresponding function	Comments
CHECK	**Diagnostic**	Recap of current alerts.
	**Under-inflation initialisation**	Reinitialisation of the tyre pressures. Refer to the Safety section.
	**Vehicle settings**	Access to other functions with settings that can be adjusted. The functions are grouped together under three tabs: - "**Driving assistance**" - "Parking sensors" (Activation of the rear parking sensors; refer to the "Driving" section). - "Automatic rear wiper in reverse" (Activation of rear wiper coupled to reverse gear; refer to the "Visibility" section). - "**Lighting**" - "LED daytime running lamps" (Activation of the daytime running lamps; refer to the "Visibility" section). - "Guide-me-home lighting" (Automatic guide me home lighting; refer to the "Visibility" section), Select or deselect the tabs at the bottom of the screen to display the functions required.

"Settings" menu

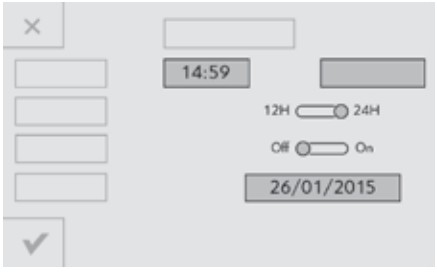
The functions accessible in this menu are given in the table below.

Button	Corresponding function	Comments
	**Audio settings**	Adjustment of volume, balance...
	**Turn off screen**	Turns off the display in the the touch screen tablet (black screen). Pressing the black screen (or the **MENU** button) restores the display.
	**System Settings**	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) - distance and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	**Time/Date**	Setting the date and time.
	**Languages**	Choice of language used from a defined list.
	**Screen settings**	Adjustment of the display settings (scrolling of text, animations...) and the screen brightness.
	**Calculator**	Display the calculator.
	**Calendar**	Display the calendar.

Setting the date and time



- Select the "**Settings**" menu.
- In the secondary page, press on "**Time/ Date**".



- Select "**Adjust time**" or "**Adjust date**".



- Modify the settings using the number keypad, then confirm.
- Press "**Confirm**" to save and quit.

When setting the time, you can select "**Satellite synchronisation**", so that the minutes are adjusted automatically by satellite reception.

Ventilation

Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Air treatment

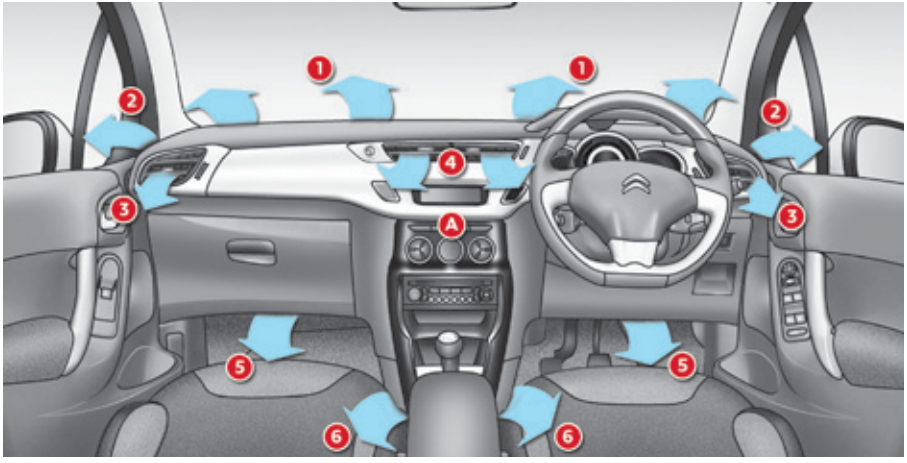
The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

The temperature control enables you to obtain the level of comfort required by mixing the air of the various circuits.

The air distribution control enables you to diffuse the air in the passenger compartment combining several air vents.

The air flow control enables you to increase or reduce the speed of the ventilation blower.



Control panel

The controls of this system are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console. Depending on the model, the functions offered are:

- the level of comfort required,
- air flow,
- air distribution,
- demisting-defrosting,
- manual or digital air conditioning controls.

Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting-defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting-defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the maintenance and warranty guide.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.
The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Heating / Ventilation

Manual control panel



Electric control panel



Manual air conditioning

Manual control panel



Electric control panel



The heating / ventilation or air conditioning systems operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode with Stop & Start.

3

1. Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

2. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from position **1** to position **5** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

☞ If you place the air flow control in position **0** (deactivation of the system), the temperature is no longer maintained at a comfortable level. However, a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

3. Air distribution adjustment



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and footwells.



Footwells.



Central and side vents.



The air distribution can be adapted by placing the dial in an intermediate position.

4. Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air avoids the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.
The recirculation of interior air insulates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.
Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to prevent deterioration of the air quality and the formation of mist.

Manual control panel



☞ Move the manual control to the left to be in the "recycling interior air" position.



☞ Move the manual control to the right to return to the "fresh air intake" position.

Electric control panel



☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.

☞ Press the button again to allow fresh air into the passenger compartment. The indicator lamp goes off to confirm this.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:
- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

Switching on

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position **"0"**.
To obtain cooled air more quickly, you can use recirculation of interior air for a few moments. Then return to fresh air intake.

Switching off

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

Front demist - defrost



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

With the heating / ventilation system

- ☞ Put the temperature and air flow controls to the dedicated marked position.
- ☞ Put the air intake control to the "Exterior air intake" position
  (manual control to the right or electric control with indicator lamp off).
- ☞ Put the air distribution control to the "Windscreen" position.

With the manual air conditioning system

- ☞ Put the temperature and air flow controls to the dedicated marked position.
- ☞ Put the air intake control to the "Exterior air intake" position
  (manual control to the right or electric control with indicator lamp off).
- ☞ Put the air distribution control to the "Windscreen" position.
- ☞ Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the **"A/C"** button; the associated green warning lamp comes on.

i With Stop & Start, when the demisting, air conditioning and air flow functions are activated, STOP mode is not available.

Digital air conditioning

The air conditioning operates when the engine is running, as well as in STOP mode with Stop & Start.



Automatic operation

1. Automatic "comfort" programme



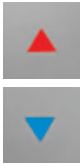
Press the **"AUTO"** button.
The **"AUTO"** symbol is displayed.

We recommend that you use this mode.
It provides optimised automatic control of all of the following functions: passenger compartment temperature, air flow, air distribution and air intake, in accordance with the comfort value that you have chosen.
This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

For your comfort, when the engine is switched off, the settings are retained until the engine is switched on again. To prevent too great a distribution of cold air when the engine is cold, the air flow will only reach its optimum level gradually.

2. Temperature adjustment

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.



Press the **"▲"** and **"▼"** buttons to change this value. A setting around the value **21** enables optimum comfort to be obtained. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is usual.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior is very cold or hot, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to reach the required level of comfort. The system corrects the temperature difference automatically and as quickly as possible.

3. Automatic "visibility" programme



The automatic comfort programme may not be sufficient for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows (humidity, several passengers, ice, etc.).

In this case, select the automatic visibility programme.
The indicator lamp in the button **3** comes on.
The system automatically controls the air conditioning and the flow of air and provides optimum air distribution to the windscreen and side windows. It deactivates air recirculation **5**.
To exit this programme, press button **3** again or **"AUTO"**, the indicator lamp in the button goes off and **"AUTO"** is displayed.

Manual override

It is possible to adjust one or more functions manually while leaving the other functions in automatic mode.
The **"AUTO"** symbol switches off.
To return to automatic mode, press the **"AUTO"** button.

Switching to manual mode may not be suitable (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation) and does not provide optimum comfort.

For maximum cooling or heating of the cabin, it is possible to go beyond the minimum 14 or maximum 28 values.

☞ Press the blue button **2** until **"LO"** is displayed or the red button **2** until **"HI"** is displayed.

4. Air conditioning on/off



Press this button to switch off the air conditioning.

Stopping the air conditioning may cause some problems (humidity, misting).
Automatic operation of the air conditioning is resumed when the button is pressed again.
The symbol **"A/C"** is displayed.

5. Air intake / Air recirculation



Press this button for recirculation of the interior air. The air recirculation symbol **5** is displayed.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.

Press this button again or press the **"AUTO"** button to resume automatic management of the intake of air. The air recirculation symbol **5** goes off.

Avoid prolonged recirculation of interior air (risk of condensation or deterioration of the air quality).

6. Air distribution adjustment



Pressing this button several times in succession enables the air flow to be directed in turn towards:

- the windscreen and the side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the windscreen, side windows and air vents,
- the windscreen, the side windows, the air vents and the footwells,
- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells,
- the footwells,
- the air vents and the footwells,
- the air vents.

7. Air flow adjustment



Press the **"full fan"** button to increase the air flow.

The air flow symbol, the fan, fills progressively according to the value requested.



Press the **"empty fan"** button to decrease the air flow.

Switching the system off



Press the air flow **"empty fan"** button **7** until the fan symbol disappears.

This action switches off all of the functions of the air conditioning system.
Thermal comfort is no longer controlled.
A slight flow of air resulting from the movement of the vehicle, remains perceptible however.
Pressing the air flow **"full fan"** button **7** or on **"AUTO"** reactivates the system with the values set before it was switched off.

Avoid driving for long periods with the air conditioning switched off (risk of misting and reduction of the air quality in the cabin).

Rear screen demist - defrost



The control button is located on the heating or air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

The rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate when the engine is running.

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Switching off

The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button switches off.

i If the engine is switched off before the demisting/defrosting is switched off automatically, demisting/defrosting will resume next time the engine is switched on.

Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as reducing electrical power consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

Scented air freshener

This diffuses a fragrance in the passenger compartment, by means of the adjustment dial and the various fragrance cartridges available.

Adjustment dial



This dial is located on the dashboard.
It allows you to adjust the intensity of diffusion of the fragrance.

- ☞ Turn the dial to the right to permit diffusion of the fragrance.
- ☞ Turn the dial to the left to stop diffusion of the fragrance.

Leave the central vents open.

i The intensity of diffusion of the fragrance may depend on the ventilation or air conditioning settings.

Fragrance cartridge

This cartridge can be removed easily. The first time it is used, replace the plug with a real cartridge.
You can change it at any time and store it in the sealed case which keeps it closed once it has been opened.
You can obtain different fragrance cartridges from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Do not discard the original cartridge as this serves as a plug when no fragrance cartridge is in use.
In order to preserve the service life of the cartridge, turn the dial fully to the left when you no longer wish to diffuse the fragrance in the passenger compartment.

! As a safety precaution, do not carry out any action on the cartridge while driving.
Do not dismantle the cartridges.
Do not attempt to refill the fragrance diffuser or the cartridges.
Avoid all contact with the skin and eyes.
Keep out of reach of children and animals.

Removing the cartridge

- ☞ Press the dial and turn it a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Remove the cartridge.
- ☞ Refit its sealing case.



Fitting the cartridge

- ☞ Remove the cartridge from the sealing case.
- ☞ Install the cartridge (flower at top left).
- ☞ Press the dial and turn it a quarter of a turn clockwise.

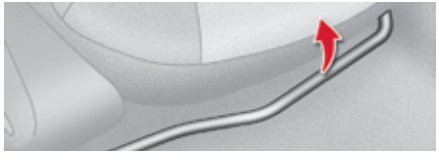
Front seats

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

Adjustments

Forwards-backwards





☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Height





☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as required, to obtain the position required.

Seat backrest angle

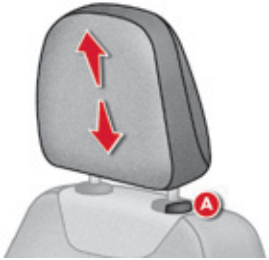




☞ Push the control rearwards.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.

Additional adjustments



Head restraint height

- To raise the head restraint, pull it forwards and upwards at the same time.
- To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back.
- To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and the head restraint at the same time.

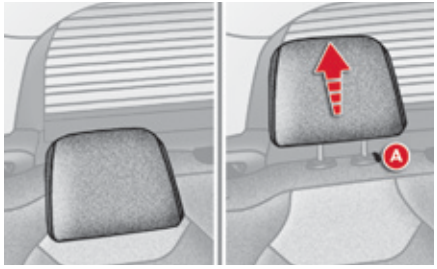
! The head restraint is fitted with a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.
Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.

Rear seats

Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and split backrest (right hand 2/3, left hand 1/3) to adjust the load space in the boot.

Rear head restraints

These have one position for use (up) and a stowed position (down).



They can also be removed.
To remove a head restraint:

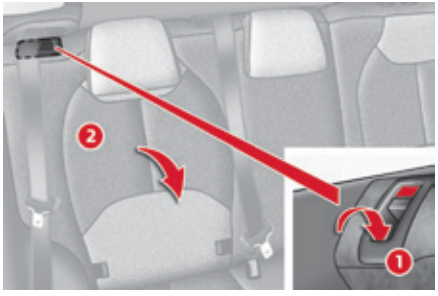
- release the backrest using control **1**,
- tilt the backrest **2** slightly forwards,
- pull the head restraint upwards to the stop,
- then, press the lug **A**.

! With passengers in the rear seats, never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

Folding the backrest



- Move the corresponding front seat forward if necessary.
- Check that the seat belt is positioned correctly on the side of the seat backrest.
- Place the head restraints in the low position.



- Pull control **1** forwards to release the seat backrest **2**.
- Fold the seat backrest **2** on to the cushion.

Repositioning the seat backrest



- Straighten the seat backrest **2** and secure it.
- Check that the red indicator, located next to the control **1**, is no longer visible.

! When repositioning the seat backrest, take care not to trap the seat belts.

Mirrors

Door mirrors



Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

Demisting - Defrosting

If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates by switching on the heated rear screen.
Refer to the "Rear screen demist-defrost" section.



Adjustment

- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.

! The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

- ☞ From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, with the control **A** in the central position, pull it downwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- ☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, with the control **A** in the central position, pull it downwards.

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Never fold or unfold the electric folding mirrors manually.

Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.
Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...

Manual day/night model



Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

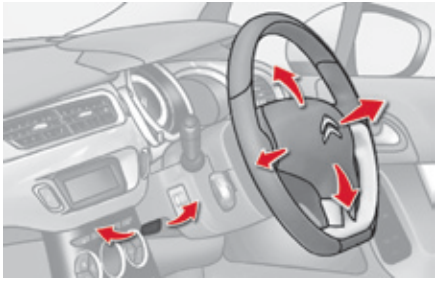
Automatic day/night model



By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Steering wheel adjustment



☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
☞ Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

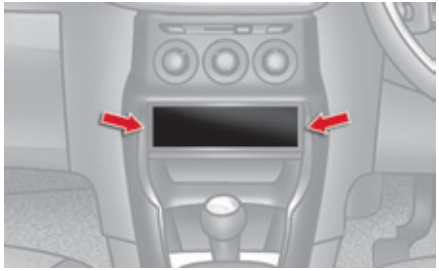
Audio pre-equipment

Your vehicle is equipped with certain factory-fitted audio equipment:

- a dual-function aerial at the rear of the roof,
- a coaxial aerial cable,
- basic interference suppression,
- cabling for speakers in the front doors and tweeters in the dashboard,
- cabling for speakers in the rear doors
- a 40-way connector.

Fitting an audio unit

The audio unit is fitted in place of one of the storage boxes located below the heating and air conditioning control panel.



☞ Unclip the storage box on each side using a screwdriver and pull out.

You will then have access to an aerial coaxial cable and a 40-way connector.

Then refer to the instructions provided with your audio unit.

Fitting speakers

It is possible to fit:

- 165 mm diameter speakers in the front doors,
- 130 mm diameter speakers in the rear doors,
- 22.5 mm diameter tweeters in the top of the dashboard.

i Before installing a radio unit or speakers in your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer who will give you the part number for a suitable wiring harness.

Connector lines

A1	(+) Right hand rear speaker
A2	(+) Right hand front speaker and tweeter
A3	(+) Left hand front speaker and tweeter
A4	(+) Left hand rear speaker
A5	(-) Right hand rear speaker
A6	(-) Right hand front speaker and tweeter
A7	(-) Left hand front speaker and tweeter
A8	(-) Left hand rear speaker
A9	Not used
A10	Not used
A11	Not used
A12	(+) Permanent
A13	Not used
A14	Not used
A15	(+) Ignition switched (operation of the audio system only with the ignition on)
A16	Earth

! Never use a separate wire to connect the (+) of your audio equipment (risk of discharging of the battery).

Accessories

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is available from the CITROËN dealer network.
These accessories and parts are all suitable for your vehicle and benefit from CITROËN's recommendation and warranty.

Conversion kits

You can obtain an "Enterprise" kit to convert a trade vehicle to a private car and vice-versa.

"Comfort"
sun blinds, door deflectors, insulated module, smoking kit, fragrance cartridges, front centre armrest, moveable mirror, reading lamp, front and rear parking sensors, cup holder, coat hanger for head restraint, solar film for windows, security film for windows...

"Transport solutions":
boot tray, boot carpet, boot net, boot containers, transverse roof bars, bicycle carrier, ski carrier, roof boxes, towbars, towbar wiring harnesses...

! If a towbar and wiring are fitted outside the CITROËN dealer network, this must be done making use of the vehicle's electrical pre-equipment and following the manufacturer's recommendations.

"Style":
leather steering wheel, gear lever knobs, front spoiler, rear diffuser, bumper trims, front foglamp trims, parking brake lever trims, aluminium footrest, alloy wheels, wheel trims, chrome tailgate finisher, chrome tailpipe finisher, chrome mirror shells, chrome door handles ...

"Security and safety":
anti-theft alarm, wheel security bolts, stolen vehicle tracking system, breathaliser, first aid kit, warning triangle, high visibility vest, dog guard, snow chains, non-slip covers, foglamps kit, child seats and booster cushions, pet transport protectors...

"Protection":
mats*, mudflaps, seat covers, door sill protectors, bumper protection strips, vehicle protective cover, side protectors, boot mat, boot liner...

* To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

"Multimedia":
Bluetooth® hands-free kit, support for Bluetooth® hands-free kit, audio systems with steering controls interface, portable satellite navigation system, semi-integral portable navigation system carrier, mapping updates for integral navigation system, DVD player, auxiliary cable for connecting a portable MP3 player, USB Box, Hi-Fi module, speakers, Wi-Fi on board, rear multimedia support, telephone/ smartphone support, 230 V socket, telephone charge compatible with iPhone...

By going to a CITROËN dealer, you can also obtain cleaning and maintenance products (interior and exterior) - including ecological products in the "TECHNATURE" range - products for topping up (screenwash fluid...), touch up pens and paint aerosols for the exact colour of your vehicle, recharges (cartridge for the temporary puncture repair kit...), ...

Installation of radio communication transmitters

Before installing any after-market radio communication transmitter, you can contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

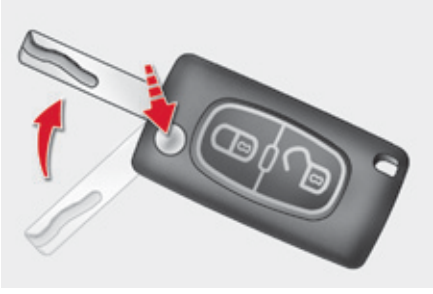
Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalyzers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle.

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

Remote control key

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

Unlocking the vehicle



Unfolding the key

☞ First press this button to unfold the key.

Unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.
According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time.

Locking the vehicle

Locking using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle.

Locking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.

Locking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.
According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.
When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock itself again automatically after thirty seconds unless a door or the boot is opened.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.

☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking using the key

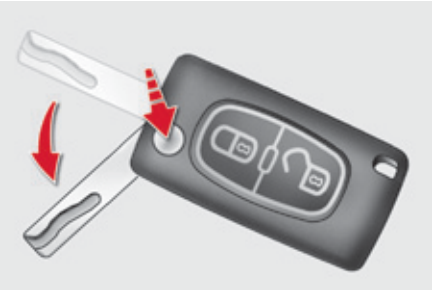
☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.

☞ Turn the key to the left again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central control button.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



Folding the key

☞ First press this button to fold the key.

If you do not press the button when folding the key, there is a risk of damage to the mechanism.

Locating your vehicle



☞ Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park.

This is indicated by lighting of the courtesy lamps and flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control fault you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.

☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

Reinitialisation

☞ Switch off the ignition.

☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.



Changing the battery

Battery ref.: CR1620 / 3 volts.

SERVICE If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message.

☞ Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.

☞ Slide the flat battery out of its location.

☞ Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.

☞ Clip the casing.

☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

Lost keys

Go to a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.
The CITROËN dealer will be able to look up the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.
No remote control can operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, never leave children alone in the vehicle, except for a very short period.
In all cases, it is essential to remove the key from the ignition switch when leaving the vehicle.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the pairing of all of the keys in your possession checked by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that only your keys can be used to open and start the vehicle.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Alarm

System which protects and provides a deterrent against the theft of your vehicle. It provides two types of protection, exterior and interior, as well as a self-protection function.

Exterior perimeter protection

The system detects opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to enter the vehicle by forcing a door, the boot or the bonnet.

Interior volumetric protection

The system detects any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window or moves inside the vehicle.
If you wish to leave a pet in the vehicle or a window partially open, deactivate the interior volumetric protection.

Self-protection function

The system detects the putting out of service of its components.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to put the wires of the siren, the central control or the battery out of service.

! Do not make any modifications to the alarm system, this could cause malfunctions.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm



Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the locking button on the remote control.

The alarm is activated; the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes once per second.
The exterior perimeter protection is activated, 5 seconds after the locking button on the remote control is pressed.
The interior volumetric protection is activated, 45 seconds after the locking button on the remote control is pressed.

i If an opening - door or boot - is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter protection will be activated after 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric protection.

Deactivation

☞ Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm is deactivated; the indicator lamp in button **A** goes off.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter protection only

Deactivation of the interior volumetric protection

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Within ten seconds, press button **A** until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle without delay using the locking button on the remote control.

The exterior perimeter protection alone remains activated; the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes once per second.

> **i** To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivation of the interior volumetric protection

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the remote control.
- ☞ Relock the vehicle using the remote control.

The alarm is activated again with both types of protection; the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes once per second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for approximately thirty seconds.
After it has been triggered, both types of protection are again operational.
If the alarm is triggered ten times in succession, the eleventh time will result in it becoming inactive.

> **!** If the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes rapidly, this indicates that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.
> To avoid triggering the alarm when washing your vehicle, lock it using the key in the driver's door lock.

Failure of the remote control

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
- ☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's or passenger's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, illumination of the indicator lamp in button **A** for ten seconds indicates malfunction with the siren.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic activation*

2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the alarm is activated automatically.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control.

* According to country.

Window controls

The one-touch type has a system which provides protection if an obstacle is detected and there is a deactivation system to prevent misuse of the rear switches on all models.



1. Driver's electric window.
2. Passenger's electric window.
3. Rear right electric window.
4. Rear left electric window.
5. Deactivating the rear electric window and door switches.
   Deactivation of the rear electric window controls.

The electric window switches remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until a front door is opened. During this period of 45 seconds, if you open a door while opening a window, the window stops. The ignition must then be switched on again to operate the windows.

Electric windows



☞ Press or pull the switch. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

One-touch electric windows







There are two methods of operation:

- **manual mode**
  ☞ Press or pull the switch gently. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.
- **automatic mode**
  ☞ Press or pull the switch fully. The window opens or closes completely when the switch is released.
  ☞ Pressing or pulling the switch again stops the movement of the window.

4

Safety anti-pinch

The one-touch front electric windows are fitted with a safety anti-pinch function.
When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

In the event of unwanted opening of the window on closing (for example in the presence of frost):

- ☞ press the switch beyond the point of resistance and then release it: the window opens completely,
- ☞ then pull it immediately without passing the point of resistance until the window closes completely,
- ☞ continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.

* Depending on country.



Deactivating the rear window and door switches

- ☞ For the safety of your children, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the rear windows irrespective of their position.

With the indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.
With the indicator lamp off, the rear controls are operational.

This control also deactivates the interior rear door controls* (refer to the "Child safety - Electric child lock" section).

Reinitialisation

In the event of a malfunction you have to reinitialise the operation of the electric windows:

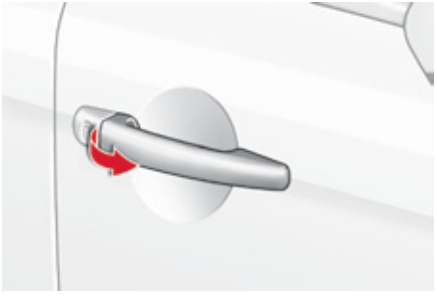
- ☞ release the switch and pull it again until the window closes completely,
- ☞ hold the switch for approximately one second after closing,
- ☞ press the switch to lower the window automatically.

The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of contact during operation of the windows, reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned.
When the driver operates the passenger electric window switches, they should ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.
The driver should ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

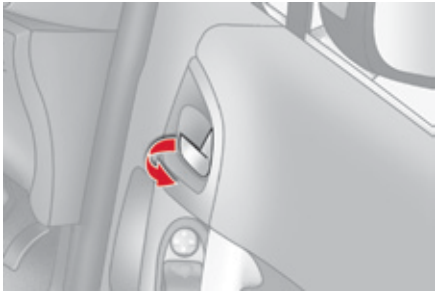
Doors

Opening



From outside

☞ After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.



From inside

☞ Pull the front door control to open the door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

☞ Pull the rear door control to open the door; this unlocks only the door opened.

Version with deadlocking

The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

Closing

When a door or the boot is not closed correctly:

- **When the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **When the vehicle is moving** (speed higher than 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

Central locking

Manual central locking



System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors from the inside.

Locking

☞ Press button **A** to lock the vehicle.
The red indicator lamp on the button comes on.

i If one of the doors is open, central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking

☞ Press button **A** again to unlock the vehicle.
The red indicator lamp on the button switches off.

i If the vehicle is locked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and button **A** is inactive.
☞ In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic central locking

System which provides full automatic locking or unlocking of the doors and the boot while driving.
You can activate or deactivate this function.

Locking

When the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors and the boot lock automatically.

! If one of the doors is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.
If the boot is open, the automatic central locking of the doors is active.

Unlocking

☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press button **A** to unlock the doors and the boot temporarily.



Activation

☞ Press button **A** for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears in the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Deactivation

☞ Press button **A** again for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears in the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Emergency control

To lock or unlock the doors manually in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or failure of the battery.

> In the event of a malfunction with the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to lock the boot and so secure the vehicle completely.

Locking the driver's door

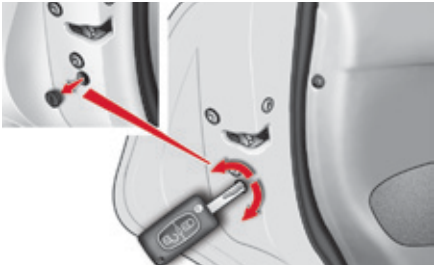
☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the left.

Unlocking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the right.

Locking the front and rear passenger doors

> Check that the rear doors child lock is not on.



☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.

☞ Insert the key in the recess, then turn it as far as it will go.

☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.

Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

Boot

Opening



☞ After unlocking the vehicle, pull on the grip and raise the tailgate.

Closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.

If the tailgate is not closed correctly:



- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

Tailgate release

System for mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking malfunction.



Unlocking

☞ Fold back the rear benchseat to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.

☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.

Lighting controls

System for selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively according to climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are installed to fulfil the requirements of particular conditions of visibility:

- a rear foglamp to be seen from afar,
- front foglamps for even better forward vision.

Programming

Various automatic lighting control modes are also available according to the following options:

- guide-me-home lighting,
- automatic illumination of headlamps.

Manual controls

The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

Model without AUTO lighting



Model with AUTO lighting



A. Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.

- **0** — Lighting off / daytime running lamps.
- **AUTO** — Automatic illumination of headlamps.
- Sidelamps only.
- Dipped or main beam headlamps.

B. Stalk for switching the headlamp beam: pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Lighting of the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument panel confirms the switching on of the lighting selected.

Depending on version, the instrument panel may have permanent back-lighting. Illumination of the instrument panel is therefore not linked to the exterior lighting.

Model with rear foglamp only



Model with front foglamps and a rear foglamp



C. Foglamp selection ring.
The foglamps operate with the dipped and main beam headlamps.

Rear foglamp

☞ To switch on the foglamp, turn the ring **C** forwards.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

☞ To switch off all of the lighting, turn the ring **C** rearwards.

Front and rear foglamps

Rotate and release the ring **C**:

☞ forwards a first time to switch on the front foglamps,

☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamp,

☞ rearwards a first time to switch off the rear foglamp,

☞ rearwards a second time to switch of the front fog lamps.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model) or when the dipped headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps will remain on.

☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

! In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamp are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers.
Do not forget to switch off the front foglamps and the rear foglamp when they are no longer necessary.

Lighting on audible warning

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps switch off automatically, unless guide-me-home lighting is activated.
If the lighting is switched on manually after switching off the ignition, there is an audible signal when a front door is opened to warn the driver that they have forgotten to switch off the vehicle's lighting, with the ignition off.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

- With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



Activation

☞ Turn ring to the **"AUTO"** position. The automatic illumination of headlamps is accompanied by a message in the screen.

Deactivation

☞ Turn ring to a position other than **"AUTO"**. Deactivation is accompanied by a message in the screen.

Association with the automatic guide-me-home lighting

Association with the automatic illumination of headlamps provides "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration to 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the functions that can be set in the vehicle configuration menu (except in the case of the monochrome screen A, for which the duration is set: 60 seconds),
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic illumination of headlamps is in operation.

Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting come on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.
Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

LED daytime running lamps

Allowing the signature of the vehicle to be identified, this daytime external lighting comprises two sets of light emitting diodes (LEDs), located below each front lamp unit.



On starting the vehicle, in daylight the LED lamps come on automatically, if the lighting stalk is in position **"0"** or **"AUTO"**.
If the sidelamps and headlamps are switched on manually or automatically, the LED lamps switch off.

Setting

For countries where exterior lighting by day is not a legal requirement, you can activate or deactivate the function via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

In countries where daytime lamps are a legal requirement:
- this function is activated by default; it cannot be deactivated,
- in daylight, the sidelamps and number plate lamps also come on,
- If the sidelamps or headlamps are switched on manually or automatically, the LED lamps switch off.

In these countries, for versions not fitted with LED daytime running lamps, it is the dipped beam headlamps that come on automatically on starting the vehicle.

Headlamp adjustment



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the headlamps should be adjusted in relation to the load in the vehicle.
0. Driver only or driver + front passenger.
-. Intermediate setting
1. 5 people.
-. 5 people + load in the boot.
2. Driver only + maximum authorised load in the boot.
This position is sufficient to avoid causing dazzle.
Higher settings may limit the spread of light from the headlamps.

The initial setting is position **"0"**.

Wiper controls

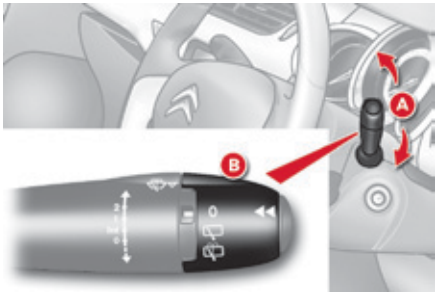
The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the weather conditions.

Programming

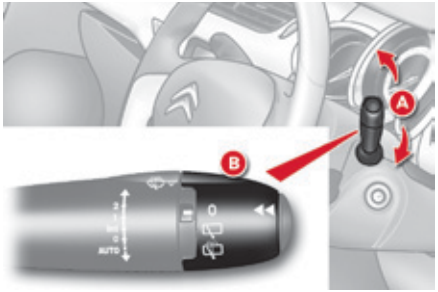
Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Model with intermittent wiping



Model with AUTO wiping



Manual controls

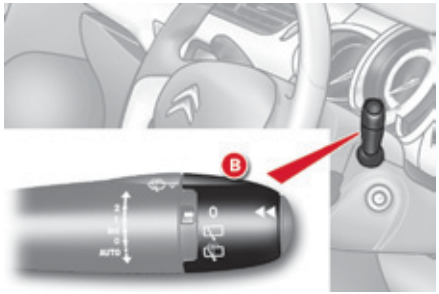
The wiper commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the stalk **A** and the ring **B**.

Windscreen wipers

A. Wiping speed selection stalk.

2	Fast (heavy rain).
1	Normal (moderate rain).
I	Intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
0	Off.
↓	Single wipe (press down and release).
	or
AUTO ↓	Automatic, then single wipe (see the corresponding section).

Rear wiper



! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

B. Rear wiper selection ring.

Park.

Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.
This function is activated by default.

Windscreen wash

Pull the wiper stalk towards you.
The windscreen wash, then the windscreen wipers, operate for a pre-determined time.

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.

Activation



This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing stalk **A** to the **"AUTO"** position.



It is accompanied by the illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel and a message in the multifunction screen.

Switching off



This is controlled manually by the driver by moving stalk **A** upwards, returning it to position **"0"**.



It is accompanied by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off and a message in the multifunction screen.

The automatic wiping must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing stalk **A** downwards.

Operating fault

If an automatic wiping fault occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.
Switch off the automatic wiping when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wiping.

Vertical windscreen wiper position



This position allows the wiper blades to be lifted for winter parking, cleaning or replacement without damaging the bonnet.
In the minute following switching off of the ignition, any action on the wiper stalk positions the wipers vertically.
To park the wipers after this has been done, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

To retain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- not use them to hold a sheet of cardboard against the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Courtesy lamps

Selection and control of the various passenger compartment lamps.



Version without Zenith windscreen

A. Central courtesy lamp



Version with Zenith windscreen

1. Rear side reading lamps
2. Rear courtesy lamp

Central or rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when a door is opened,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

> In permanent lighting mode, the lighting duration varies, according to the circumstances:
> - with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
> - in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
> - with the engine running, unlimited.

To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, place it in the "permanently off" position.

Front side reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, the first press of the corresponding switch switches on the reading lamp concerned in permanent lighting mode.

☞ Following a second press, it comes on:

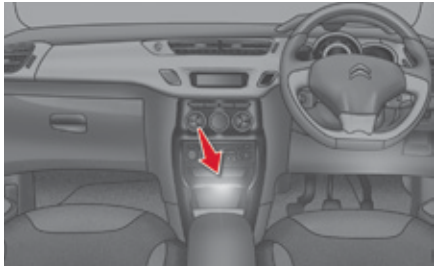
- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when a door is opened,
- when the remote control locking button is pressed, in order to locate your vehicle.

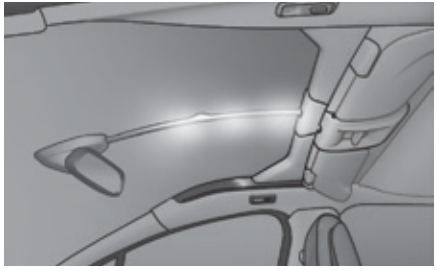
It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Interior mood lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.





Switching on

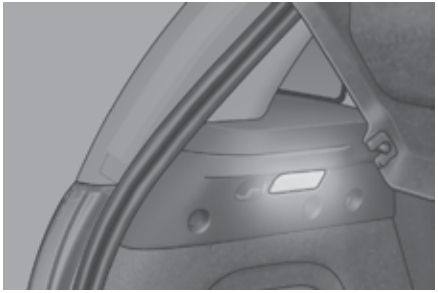
At night, the illumination of the central dashboard storage compartment comes on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.
On certain versions, three lamps located in the support between the roof and the automatic day/night interior mirror come on as well.

Switching off

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.
It can be switched off manually using the instrument panel lighting rheostat button.

- ☞ With the lighting on, press several times on the left hand button of the instrument panel to progressively reduce the dashboard lighting level.
- ☞ Press again to reduce the lighting level to the minimum and switch off the interior mood lighting.

Boot lamp

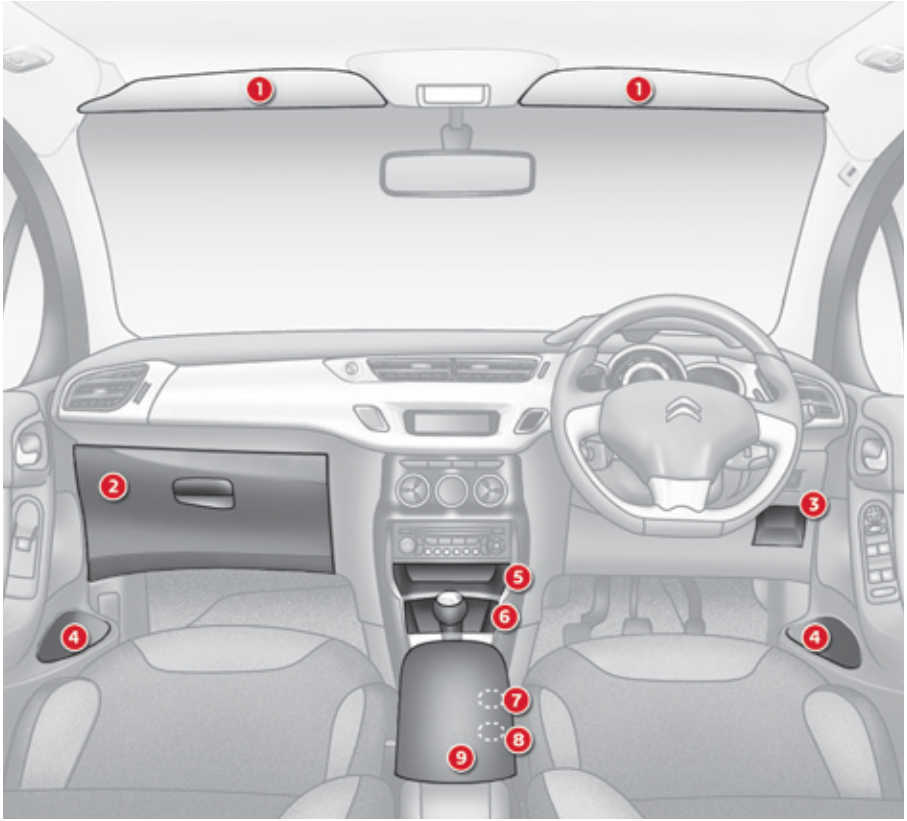


This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- when the engine is running, no limit.

Interior fittings

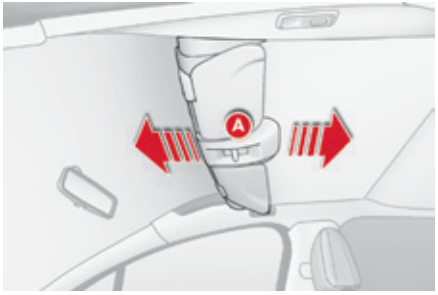
1. **Sun visor**
   or
   Zenith windscreen
2. **Glove box**
   (details on following page)
3. **Storage compartments**
4. **Door pockets**
5. **Upper storage compartment**
6. **Lower storage compartment with non-slip mat**
7. **USB port / auxiliary socket**
   (details on following page)
   or
   Coin holder
8. **12 V accessory socket**
   (details on following page)
9. **Centre armrest with storage**
   (details on following page)
   or
   Cup / bottle holder



Zenith Windscreen



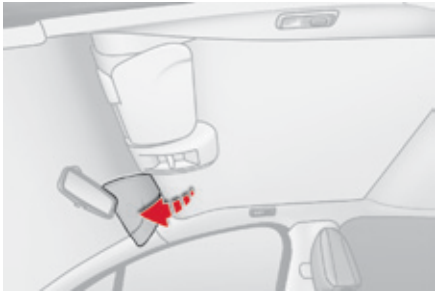
It has a manual blind to improve temperature control in the passenger compartment and sun visors to avoid dazzle.



Blind

- ☞ To open the blind, take it by its central grip **A**, then pull it backwards and guide it to the desired position.
- ☞ To close the blind, take it by its central grip **A**, then pull it forwards and guide it to the desired position.

Before moving the blind, the sun visors must be in the folded position.

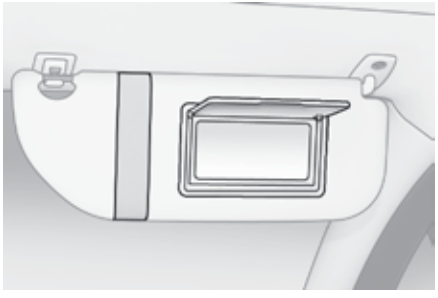


Sun visors

- ☞ Lower the sun visors to avoid dazzle.

! Do not attach or hang heavy objects to the blind or its guide rails.

Sun visor



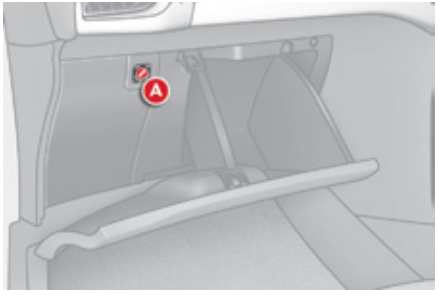
Version without Zenith windscreen

The sun visors are fitted with a vanity mirror, with concealing flap for the driver and a ticket / card holder.

Version with Zenith windscreen

Refer to the corresponding section.

Glove box



☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch **A**.

It houses the dashboard fusebox (see the "Changing a fuse" section).

Centre armrest



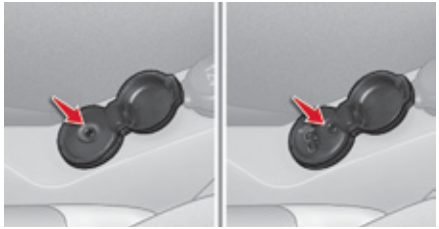
Storage

☞ For access to the closed storage box, lift the lever to open the lid.

☞ For access to the open storage box below the armrest, lift the complete armrest towards the rear.

These can be used for portable devices (mobile phone, MP3 player...) which can be connected to the USB port / auxiliary socket or charged from the 12 V socket in the centre console.

Auxiliary socket



The socket is located in the "**AUX**" box on the centre console.
It permits the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® type, to listen to your music files using the vehicle's speakers.

i The management of the files is done using your portable device.

For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

USB Player

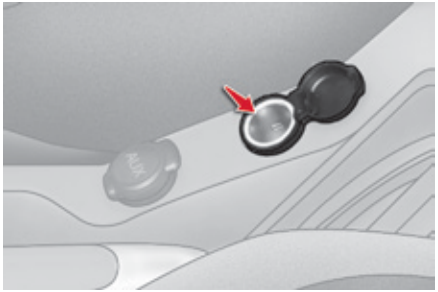


The USB port is located in the **"AUX"** box on the centre console.
It permits the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® generation 5 and later type or USB memory stick type.
It reads the audio file formats (mp3, ogg, wma, wav...) sent to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.
You can manage these files using the steering mounted controls or the audio system control panel and display them in the multifunction screen.

i When it is in use, the portable device charges automatically.

For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

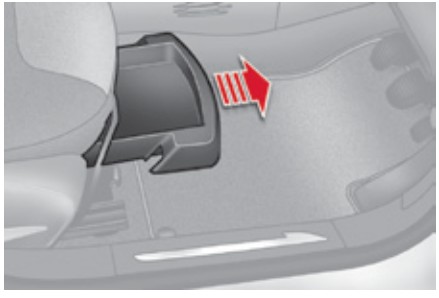
12 V accessory socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

Storage drawer



The storage drawer is located under the driver's seat.

Opening

☞ Raise the front of the drawer and pull it.

Removal

☞ Bring the drawer to the end of its travel.
☞ Press the ends of the slides.
☞ Raise the drawer and pull it fully.

Refitting

☞ Engage the drawer in its slides.
☞ At the end of its travel, press on the top of the drawer to secure it.

! Do not place heavy objects in the drawer.

Mats



Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.
The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:
☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
☞ unclip the fixings,
☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:
☞ position the mat correctly,
☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

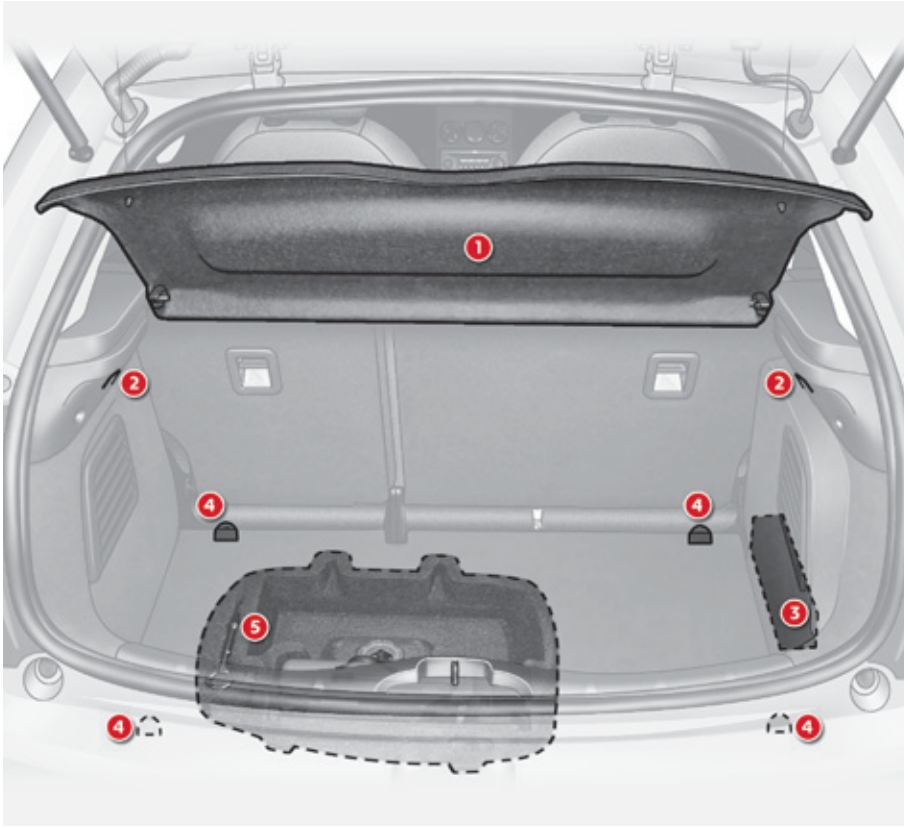
! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.
The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

6

Boot fittings

1. **Rear parcel shelf**
   (see following page for details)
2. **Hooks**
   (see following page for details)
3. **Location for Hi-Fi amplifier**
4. **Stowing rings**
5. **Storage box (version equipped with a temporary puncture repair kit)**
   (see following page for details)
   or
   Tool box (version equipped with a spare wheel)
   (refer to the "Changing a wheel" section)



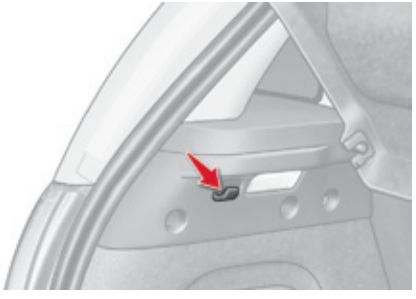
Rear parcel shelf



To remove the shelf:

- ☞ unhook the two cords,
- ☞ raise the shelf slightly, then unclip it on each side.

Hooks



The hooks can be used to hold shopping bags.

Storage box



- ☞ Raise the boot carpet by pulling the strap upwards to gain access to the storage box.

This has areas for storing a temporary puncture repair kit, a box of spare bulbs, a first aid kit, two warning triangles, ...



- ☞ Refit the boot floor carpet by folding it slightly in the middle.

6

General points relating to child seats

Although one of CITROËN main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

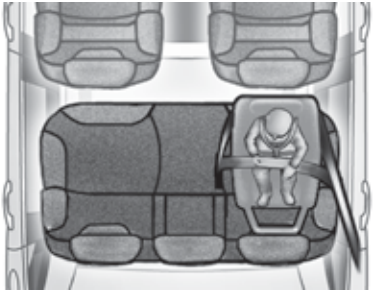
CITROËN recommends that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
- **forward facing** over the age of 3.

* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

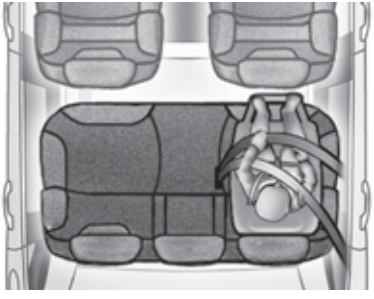
Child seat at the rear

Rearward facing



When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

i Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

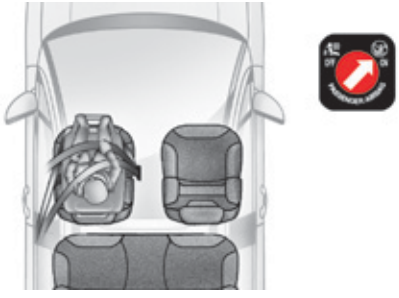
Child seat in the front*

Rearward facing

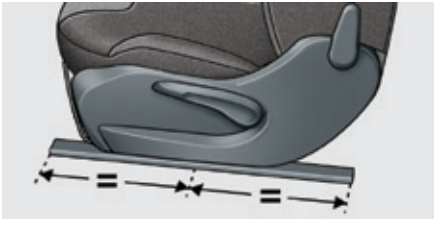


When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the intermediate longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.
The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate**.

Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal position with seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's front airbag activated.



Passenger seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal position.

* Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child on the front seat.

Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in stable contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

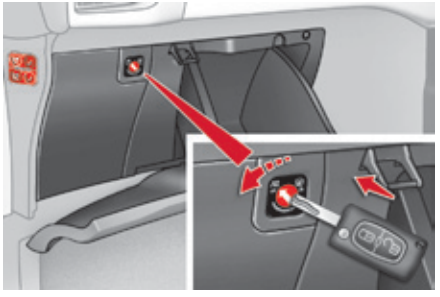
The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.





Passenger airbag OFF





i For information on deactivating the passenger's front airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

7

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهّز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعّلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermeküléstAKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.

MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg	
	**L1** "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the rearward facing position.
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg	
	**L4** "KLIPPAN Optima" From 22 kg (approximately 6 years), the booster is used on its own.
	**L5** "RÖMER KIDFIX" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Installing child seats attached using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved **(a)** in accordance with the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat	**Weight of the child and indicative age**			
	Under 13 kg (groups 0 **(b)** and 0+) Up to approx 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) 1 to 3 years approx	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) 3 to 6 years approx	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) 6 to 10 years approx
Front passenger seat **(c) (e)** 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Outer rear seats **(d)** 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Centre rear seat **(d)** 	**U (f)**	**U (f)**	**U**	**U**

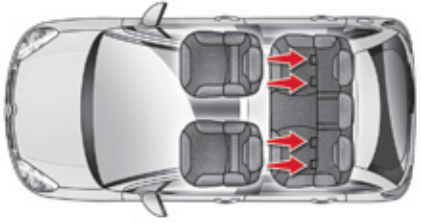
7

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using a seat belt.
(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Shells seats and baby carriers cannot be installed in the front passenger seat. When installed in the 2nd row, they may prevent use of the other seats.
(c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.
(d) To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward facing or forward facing, move the front seats forward, then straighten their backrests to allow sufficient space for the child seat and the child's legs.
(e) When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on the front passenger seat**, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.
When a forward facing child seat is installed **on the front passenger seat**, the passenger's front airbag must remain active.
(f) A child seat with support leg must never be installed on this **passenger seat**.
U: Seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved, rearward facing and/or forward facing.

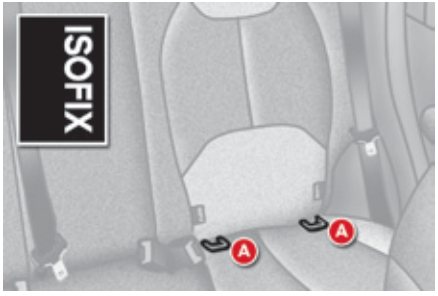
Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

"ISOFIX" mountings

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest ISOFIX regulation**.
The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a label,



- a ring **B**, behind the seat, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for securing the upper strap.

The **TOP TETHER** is used to secure the upper strap of child seats that have one. This arrangement limits the forward tipping of the child seat in the event of a front impact.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**. Some seats also have an **upper strap** which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the top tether:
- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- pass the child seat strap over the top of the backrest of the seat, keeping it centred between the head restraint apertures,
- secure the hook of the upper strap to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the right hand rear seat, before fixing the seat in place, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle so as to not interfere with the operation of the seat belt.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

! Follow strictly the advice given in the installation instructions provided with the child seat.

Refer to the table for the possibilities for fitting ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle.

ISOFIX child seat recommended by CITROËN and approved for your vehicle

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category **B1**)	
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	
	Installed only in the forwards facing position. Secured to rings **A**, as well as the third ring **B**, called the TOP TETHER, using the upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying.

This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.
Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

Installing ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for the installation of ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of the universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the child seat's ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter between **A** and **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child and indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to 6 months approx		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to 1 year approx			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From 1 to 3 years approx				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Infant car seat**		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats which can be installed on the outer rear seats	**X**		**X**	**IL-SU**		**X**	**IL-SU**	**IUF IL-SU**		

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, **F**orward facing and secured using the TOP TETHER upper strap.
IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat which is:
- rearward facing fitted with a Top Tether upper strap or a support leg,
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- baby cot fitted with a Top Tether upper strap or a support leg.

For the securing of the Top Tether upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX Mountings" section.
X: seat which is not suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat or cot of the weight group indicated.

Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Advice on child seats

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:
- a rearward facing child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted forward facing.

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimum installation of the forward facing child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, in contact if possible.
You mst remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest to a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.
Deactivate the passenger airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front seat.
Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.
As a safety precaution, do not leave:
- a child or children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows*.

The control is located:

- either on the dashboard, driver's side, for versions without rear electric windows,
- or on the driver's door, with the electric window controls, for versions fitted with rear electric windows.



Switching the child lock on

☞ Press this button.

The indicator lamp on the button comes on, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.

This indicator lamp remains on while the child lock is on.

Switching the child lock off

☞ Press the button again.

The indicator lamp on the button goes off, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.

This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is off.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Check the state of the child lock every time you switch on the ignition.

! Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

* According to version.

Direction indicators



- Left: lower the lighting stalk beyond the point of resistance.
- Right: raise the lighting stalk beyond the point of resistance.

Three flashes of the direction indicators

- Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Hazard warning lamps

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



- Press this button, the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

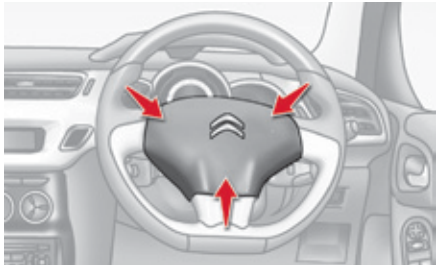
When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



☞ Press one of the spokes of the steering wheel.

Emergency or assistance call



This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated CITROËN service.

For more information on the use of this function, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Under-inflation detection

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

The system monitors the pressures in the four tyres, once the vehicle is moving.
It compares the information given by the four wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.
The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

The under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous condition (high loading, high speed, long journey).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
See the "Identification markings" section.
Tyre pressures should be checked when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise (when hot), add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Under-inflation alert

This is given by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment),

or

- if you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold,

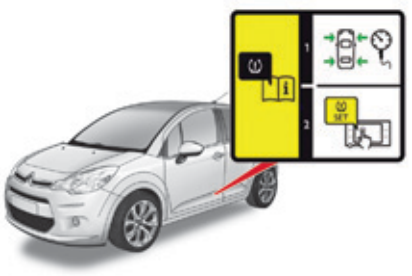
or

- if it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

i The alert is maintained until the system is reinitialised.

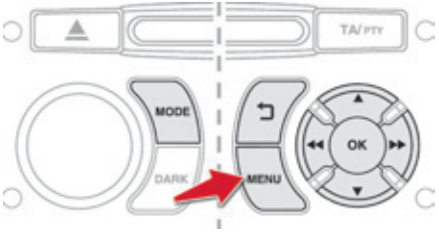
Reinitialisation

It is necessary to reinitialise the system every time one or more tyre pressure is adjusted, and after changing one or more wheels.
A label on the middle pillar, left hand side, gives a reminder of this.



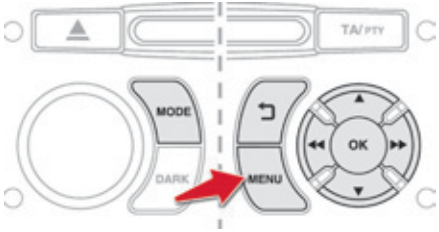
! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the use of the vehicle, as given on the tyre pressure label.
The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Reinitialisation of the system is done in the vehicle configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary and the **ignition on**.



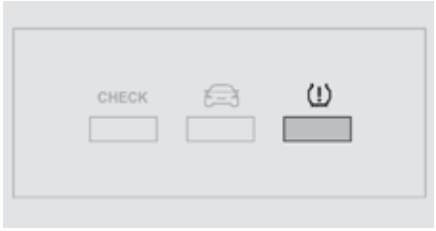
Monochrome screen A

- Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the **Veh config** menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "**Reinit inflat**", menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
  A message is displayed to confirm the instruction.
- Confirm by pressing the **OK** button.



Monochrome screen C

- Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "**Define vehicle parameters**" menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "**Tyre pressures**" menu, then the "**Reinitialisation**" menu, then confirming by pressing the **OK** button.
  A message confirms the reinitialisation.



Touch screen tablet

- Press the **MENU** button.
- Select the "**Driving**" menu.
- In the secondary page, select "**Under-inflation initialisation**".

A message is displayed to confirm the reinitialisation instruction.

- Select "**Yes**" or "**No**", then confirm.
  A message confirms the reinitialisation.

The new pressure settings registered are considered to be reference values by the system.

The under-inflation alert is only dependable if the system has been reinitialised with all four tyres inflated to the correct pressures.

Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Operating fault



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.
In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.
Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

Braking assistance systems

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

! When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.



If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.
The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

! When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

Trajectory control systems

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) and dynamic stability control (DSC)

The anti-slip regulation (also known as traction control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.
The electronic stability control acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.
They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.

This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.



Deactivation

In extremely severe conditions (deep snow, mud, ...), if you are unable to move off, it may be useful to temporarily deactivate these systems so that the wheels can spin freely and allow the vehicle to move.

☞ Press this button, located near the steering wheel.

If the indicator lamp in the button comes on, this indicates that these systems are deactivated.
It is recommended that the systems be reactivated as soon as possible.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

☞ Press this button again to reactivate them manually.

Operating fault

The illumination of the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and in this button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, indicates a fault with these systems.

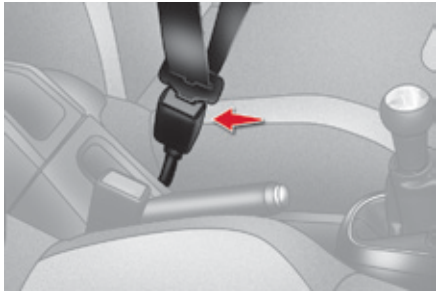
! Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
The trajectory control systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
The correct functioning of these systems is assured provided that manufacturer's recommendations are observed on:
- wheels (tyres and rims),
- braking components,
- electronic components,
- assembly and repair procedures.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.



Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, if the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

Rear seat belts

The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt.



Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.
The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis. The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.
Never allow a child to travel on your lap.
For more information, refer to the "Child seats" section.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

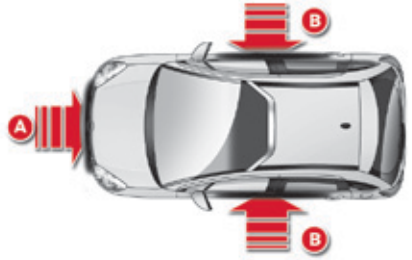
Airbags

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions.
The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts (with the exception of the centre rear passenger).
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! **The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.**
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones

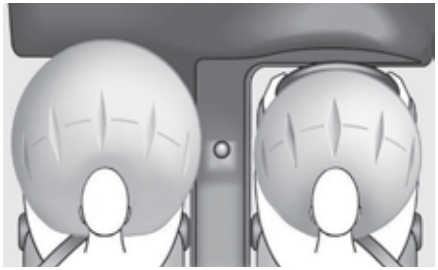


A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

i Deployment of one or more of the airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The noise of detonation related to the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and chest.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.



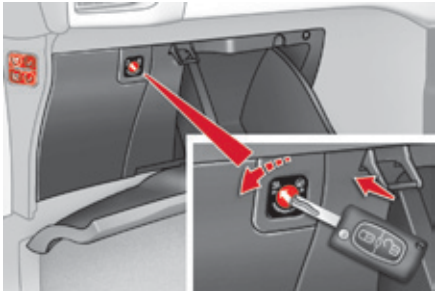
Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact applied to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the head-thorax of the front occupant of the vehicle and the dashboard to cushion their forward movement.

Deactivation

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated:

- ☞ **with the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch,
- ☞ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ then, remove the key **keeping the switch in the new position**.



This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel when the ignition is on and until the airbag is re-activated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivation

When you remove a child seat that has been fitted rearward facing, with the ignition off, turn switch to the **"ON"** position to re-activate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

Operating fault

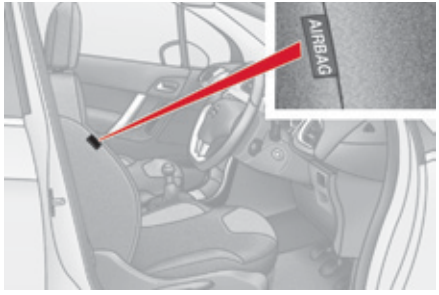
If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the multifunction screen, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

If this warning lamp flashes, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. The passenger's front airbag may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! If at least one of the two airbag warning lamps come on continuously, do not install a child seat on the front passenger seat.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Lateral airbags

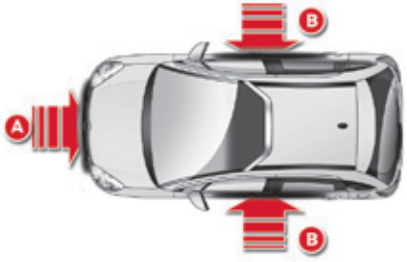
System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.



Deployment

A lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags

System which contributes towards improving the protection of the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.
Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags.
For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.
Refer to the "Accessories" section.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.
If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

A few driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations at all times and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.
On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.
In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

If you are obliged to drive through water:



- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
Do not park or run the engine when stationary in areas where inflammable substances and materials (dry grass, dead leaves...) might come into contact with the hot exhaust system - Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

Starting-switching off the engine

Anti-theft protection

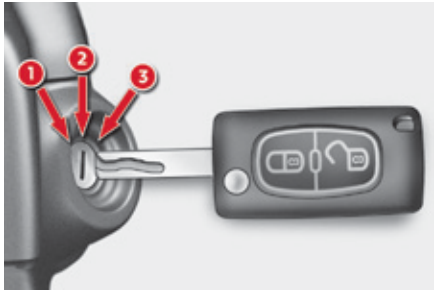
Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few moments after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

SERVICE In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.
In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

Ignition switch



It has 3 positions:
- Position 1: **Stop**
- Position 2: **Ignition on**
- Position 3: **Starting**

Ignition on

In this position the vehicle's electrical equipment can be used or accessories charged.
When the state of charge of the battery drops to a reserve level, the system goes into energy economy mode: the power supply is automatically cut off to preserve the state of charge of the battery.

Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Starting the engine

- Apply the parking brake.
- With a manual gearbox: place the lever in neutral and fully depress the clutch pedal.
- With an electronic gearbox: place the lever at position **N** and press the brake pedal firmly.
- With an automatic gearbox: place the lever at position **P** and press the brake pedal firmly.
- Insert the key in the ignition switch; the system recognises the code.
- Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

In some circumstances, you may have to apply some force to turn the steering wheel (wheels on lock for example).

- With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** until the engine starts, without pressing the accelerator pedal. Once the engine starts, release the key.
- With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine preheating system.

Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** until the engine starts, without pressing the accelerator pedal. Once the engine starts, release the key.

In wintry conditions, the warning lamp will stay on longer. When the engine is hot, it does not come on.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch the ignition off. Wait a few moments before trying again. If the engine does not start after a few attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor and the engine. Call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In temperate conditions, do not warm the engine up with the vehicle stationary, but move off straight away and drive at moderate engine speeds.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of intoxication and death. In very severe winter conditions (temperatures below -23°C), it is necessary to allow the engine to run for 4 minutes before setting off, in order to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle, the engine and gearbox.

Switching the engine off

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ☞ With the engine at idle, turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

i To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, put the front wheels in the straight ahead position before switching the ignition off.

- ☞ Ensure that the parking brake is applied correctly, particularly when on a slope.

! Never switch the ignition off until the vehicle has come to a complete stop and the parking brake has been applied. With the engine stopped, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

i When you leave the vehicle, take the key with you and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

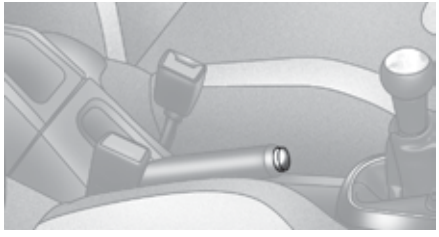
After switching off the engine (position **1 - Stop**), you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam, courtesy lamps, etc., for maximum cumulative period of 30 minutes.

i For more information, refer to the "Energy economy mode" section.

i Key reminder

If the key is left in the ignition switch, an audible signal sounds when the driver's door is opened.

Parking brake



Applying

☞ Pull the parking brake lever fully up to immobilise your vehicle.

Releasing

☞ Pull the parking brake lever gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been properly released.

! When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the pavement, apply the parking brake and engage a gear.

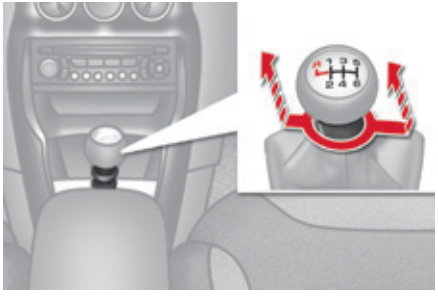
6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this advice may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engagement of 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

Electronic gearbox (ETG)

Five or six-speed electronically controlled gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of automated operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

Two driving modes are offered:

- **automated** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox, without any action by the driver,
- **manual** mode for the sequential changing of the gears by the driver, using the gear selector or the steering mounted control paddles.

In automated mode, you can temporarily take control of gear changes at any time, using the steering mounted control paddles.

Gear selector positions



R. Reverse

☞ With your foot on the brake, move the selector forwards to select this position.

N. Neutral.

☞ With your foot on the brake, select this position to start the engine.

A. Automated mode.

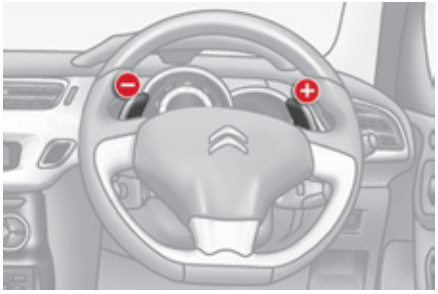
☞ Move the selector backwards to select this mode.

M + / -. Manual mode with sequential gear changing.

☞ Move the selector backwards, then to the left to select this mode, then:

- push forwards to change up a gear,
- or push backwards to change down a gear.

Steering mounted controls



+. Paddle to the right of the steering wheel for changing up.

☞ Press the back of the steering mounted **"+"** paddle to change up a gear.

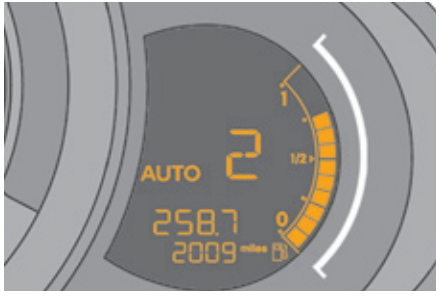
-. Paddle to the left of the steering wheel for changing down.

☞ Press the back of the steering mounted **"-"** paddle to change down a gear.

i The steering mounted paddles do not allow neutral to be selected, reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged, or the driving mode to be changed.

9

Display in the instrument panel



N. Neutral
R. Reverse
1 2 3 4 5 / 6. Gears in manual mode.
AUTO. This comes on when automated mode is selected. It goes off when changing to manual mode.

Moving off

- Select position **N**.
- Press the brake pedal fully.
- Start the engine.



N appears in the instrument panel.

If the engine does not start:
- If **N** is flashing in the instrument panel, move the gear selector to position **A**, then to position **N**.
- If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message, press firmly on the brake pedal.

- Select automated mode (position **A**), manual mode (position **M**) or reverse (position **R**).



AUTO and **1**, **1** or **R** appear in the instrument panel.

- Release the parking brake.
- Progressively take your foot off the brake pedal.

Depending on the type of electronic gearbox, the vehicle may move off on its own.
For more information, refer to the "Creep function" section.

- Accelerate away.

Do not press the brake and clutch pedals simultaneously. This can cause rapid clutch wear.

Creep function (depending on equipment)

This function allows the vehicle to be manoeuvred more easily at low speeds (when parking, in traffic jams...).
With the gear selector in position **A**, **M** or **R**, **the vehicle moves as soon as you take your foot off the brake pedal**, at low speed and with the engine at idle.

i Do not leave children unsupervised inside the vehicle when the engine is running.

! The creep function may be temporarily unavailable if the clutch temperature is too high or the slope too steep.

Automated mode

☞ Select position **A**.



AUTO and the gear engaged appear in the instrument panel.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any action on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear taking account of:
- optimisation of fuel consumption,
- driving style,
- road conditions,
- vehicle load.

For optimum acceleration, when overtaking another vehicle for example, press the accelerator pedal fully down, beyond the point of resistance.

i You can change mode at any time by moving the gear selector from **A** to **M** or the other way round.

! Never select neutral (position **N**) when moving.

Temporary control of gear changing

You can temporarily take over control of gear changes using the steering mounted **"+"** and **"-"** control paddles: if the engine speed allows, the gear change is carried out.
This function allows you to anticipate certain situations such as overtaking another vehicle or approaching a bend.
After a few moments without any action on the paddles, the gearbox resumes control of gear changing automatically.

Manual mode



☞ Select position **M**.

The gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.
The gear change requests are only carried out if the engine speed permits.
It is not necessary to release the accelerator pedal during gear changes.
When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically so that the vehicle picks up in the right gear.
Under full acceleration, the change up will not take place unless the driver operates the gear selector or steering mounted control paddle (unless the engine is close to its maximum speed).

i You can change mode at any time by moving the gear selector from **A** to **M** or the other way round.

! Never select neutral (position **N**) when moving.

Reverse

To engage reverse, the vehicle must be immobilised with your foot on the brake.
☞ Select position **R**.

i There is an audible signal on engagement of reverse.

At low speed, if reverse gear is requested, the **N** warning lamp flashes and the gearbox goes into neutral automatically.
To engage reverse, put the gear selector into position **N**, then to position **R**.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine:
- change to position **N** to be in neutral, or
- leave the vehicle in gear; in this case the vehicle cannot be moved.

! For all parking situations, you **must apply the parking brake** to immobilise the vehicle.

! When immobilising the vehicle with the engine running, you must put the gear selector into the neutral (position **N**).

! Before doing anything under the bonnet, ensure that the gear selector is in neutral (position **N**) and that the parking brake is applied.

Reinitialisation (5-speed electronic gearbox)

Following disconnection of the battery, it is necessary to reinitialise the gearbox.

☞ Switch on the ignition.



AUTO and **- -** appear in the instrument panel.

☞ Select position **N**.

☞ Press the brake pedal.

☞ Wait for around 30 seconds until **N** or a gear appears in the instrument panel.

☞ Move the gear selector to position **A**, then to position **N**.

☞ With your foot still on the brake pedal, start the engine.

The gearbox is operational again.

In exceptional circumstances, the gearbox may need an automatic reinitialisation: starting and gear changing are no longer possible.



AUTO and **- -** appear in the instrument panel.

Follow the procedure described above.

Operating fault

SERVICE

With the ignition on, if this warning lamp comes on and **AUTO** flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, this indicates a gearbox fault.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic gearbox

Four-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.
Two driving modes are available:

- **automatic** operation with electronic management of the gears by the gearbox, with a **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving and a **snow** programme to make driving easier when grip is poor.
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selection gate



1. Gear selector knob.
2. Button **"S" (sport)**.
3. Button **"❄" (snow).**

Gear selector positions



P. Park.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.
- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

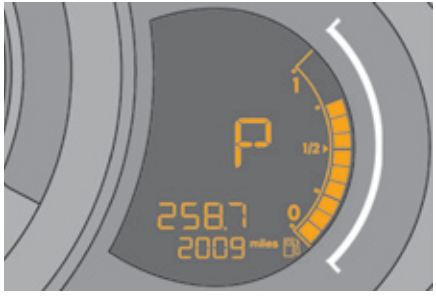
N. Neutral.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.

M + / -. Manual operation with sequential changing of the four gears.

☞ Push forwards to change up through the gears.
or
☞ Pull backwards to change down through the gears.

Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the selector in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

P. Park
R. Reverse
N. Neutral
D. Drive (Automatic driving)
S. **Sport** programme
❄. **Snow** programme
1 2 3 4. Gears engaged during manual operation
-. Invalid value during manual operation

Foot on brake



☞ Press the brake pedal when this indicator lamp is displayed in the instrument panel (e.g.: starting the engine).

Moving off

☞ Apply the parking brake.
☞ Select position **P** or **N**.
☞ Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, there is an audible signal, accompanied by the display of an warning message.

☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
☞ Release the parking brake.
☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

i If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then select position **D** to accelerate.
If the ambient temperature is below -23°C, the engine should be left at idle for four minutes, to ensure the correct operation and life of the engine and gearbox.

! When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the four gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport programme "S"

☞ Press button **"S"**, after starting the engine.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears in the instrument panel.

Snow programme "❄"

☞ Press button "❄", after starting the engine.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme improves starting and drive when traction is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to standard automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

- ☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the four gears.
- ☞ Push the selector towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the selector towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.
It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.
The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.
In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, a warning message appears in the screen.

☞ Return the selector to position **P**; the message disappears.

When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, proceed at walking pace.

Operating fault

SERVICE When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, indicates a gearbox fault.
In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.
Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:
- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the movement of the selector from the **P** position to another position when the battery is flat.

To reduce fuel consumption when at a prolonged standstill with the engine running (traffic jam...), put the selector in the **N** position and apply the parking brake.

Gear efficiency indicator*

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver to change up.

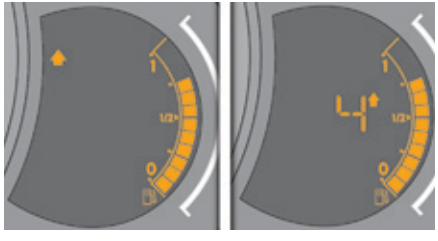
With an electronic or automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

Operation

The system intervenes only when driving economically.
Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.
The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

Example:

- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal moderately.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear, if appropriate.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow accompanied by the suggested gear.

In the case of driving which makes particular demands on the performance of the engine (firm pressure on the accelerator pedal, for example, when overtaking...), the system will not recommend a gear change.
The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

* Depending on engine.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.
Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby:

- **with a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), when you put the gear lever into neutral, and you release the clutch pedal.
- **with a 5 or 6-speed electronic gearbox**, when stationary or at speeds below 5 mph (8 km/h) (depending on version), when you press the brake pedal or put the gear selector in position **N**.



A time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It rests itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering...

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

The **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine starts:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you depress the clutch pedal,
- **with a 5-speed or 6-speed electronic gearbox**:
  - gear selector in position **A** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released, when you move the gear selector to position **A** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.

i With a manual gearbox in STOP mode, if you engage a gear without fully depressing the clutch pedal, a message is displayed asking you to fully depress the clutch pedal so that the engine can restart.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

For reasons of safety and for your comfort, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 7 mph (11 km/h) with the electronic gearbox system,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed for control of a system.

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation



At any time, press the **"ECO OFF"** switch to deactivate the system.
This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on accompanied by a message in the screen.

i If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

Reactivation

Press the **"ECO OFF"** switch again.
The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off, accompanied by a message in the screen.

The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

Operating fault

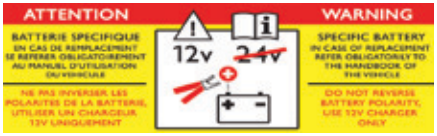


In the event of a fault with the system, the **"ECO OFF"** switch warning lamp flashes then comes on continuously.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again using the key.

Maintenance

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from automatic operation of START mode.

This system requires a battery with a special specification and technology (reference numbers available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop).
Fitting a battery not listed by CITROËN introduces the risk of malfunction of the system.



The Stop & Start system makes use of advanced technology. All work on this type of battery must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

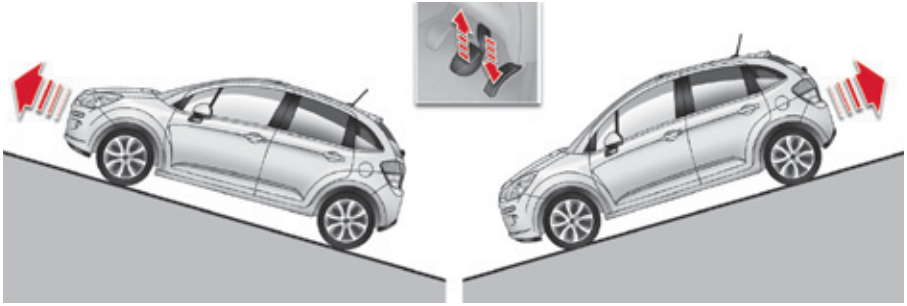
Hill start assist

System which holds your vehicle temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a slope, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
This function is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain conditions on a slope are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held momentarily when you release the brake pedal:

- provided you are in automated mode (position **A**) or in manual mode (position **M**) with an electronic gearbox.

On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held momentarily when you release the brake pedal.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.
If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, manually apply the parking brake then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp is on (not flashing) in the instrument panel.

Operating fault

SERVICE

If a malfunction of the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver. When the programmed speed limit is reached, pressing the accelerator pedal in the normal manner no longer has any effect.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually: it requires a programmed speed of at least 20 mph (30 km/h).

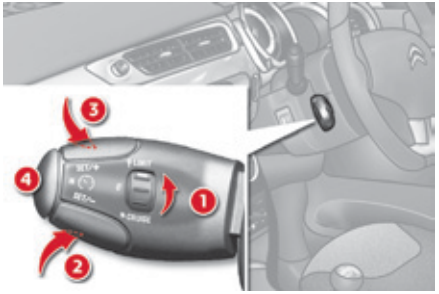
The speed limiter is **switched off** by manual operation of the control.

The programmed speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator firmly. To return to the programmed speed, simply slow down to a speed below the programmed speed.

The programmed speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

> The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to respect speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

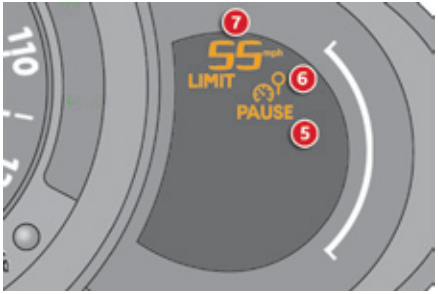
Steering mounted controls



The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Speed limiter mode selection thumb wheel.
2. Value decrease button.
3. Value increase button.
4. Speed limiter on / off button.

Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

5. Speed limiter on / off indication.
6. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
7. Programmed speed value.

9



Programming

☞ Turn thumb wheel **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (PAUSE).

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

☞ Set the speed value by pressing button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 55 mph (90 km/h)).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

☞ Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button **4**.

☞ Switch the speed limiter off by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (PAUSE).

☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button **4** again.

Exceeding the programmed speed

Pressing the accelerator pedal to exceed the programmed speed will not have any effect unless you press the pedal **firmly** past the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed, which is still displayed, flashes.

Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.

Leaving limiter mode

☞ Turn thumb wheel **1** to the **"0"** position: the speed limiter mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.











Operating fault

In the event of a speed limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

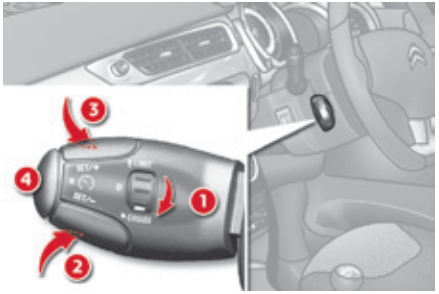
The cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h), as well as the engagement of:

- fourth gear on a manual gearbox,
- second gear on a or automatic or electronic gearbox, in sequential mode,
- position **A** on an electronic gearbox or position **D** on an automatic gearbox.

The cruise control is **switched off** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or on triggering of the trajectory control systems for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal. To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.
Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

Steering mounted controls

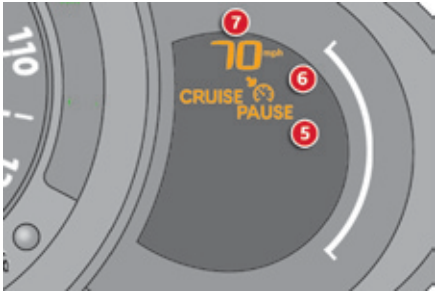


The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Cruise control mode selection thumb wheel.
2. Value decrease button.
3. Value increase button.
4. Cruise control off/resume button.

> The cruise control cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to respect speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

5. Cruise control off/resume indication.
6. Cruise control mode selection indication.
7. Programmed speed value.

9



Programming

☞ Turn thumb wheel **1** to the **"CRUISE"** position: the cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (PAUSE).

☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 70 mph (110 km/h)).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

☞ Switch off the cruise control by pressing button **4**: the screen confirms that it has been switched off (PAUSE).

☞ Switch the cruise control back on by pressing button **4** again.

Exceeding the programmed speed

Intentional or unintentional exceeding of the programmed speed results in flashing of this speed in the screen.
Return to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the speed.

Leaving cruise control mode

☞ Turn thumb wheel **1** to the **"0"** position: the cruise control mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.











Operating fault

In the event of a cruise control malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



! When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed changing buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.
Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.
On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Rear parking sensors

System consisting of four proximity sensors, located in the rear bumper.



This detects any obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) behind the vehicle, except obstacles located just below the bumper.

! An object, such as a stake, a roadworks cone or any other similar object may be detected at the beginning of the manoeuvre, but may no longer be detected when the vehicle comes close to it.

Activation



The system is activated as soon as reverse gear is engaged, accompanied by an audible signal. The proximity information is given by:

- an audible signal, which becomes more rapid as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
- a graphic (according to version) in the multifunction screen, with blocks which become increasingly closer to the vehicle.

When the distance between the rear of the vehicle and the obstacle is less than thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous and the "Danger" symbol appears in the multifunction screen.





On completion of the manoeuvre, when you exit reverse gear, the system becomes inactive.

! The parking sensor system cannot in any circumstances be a substitute for vigilance on the part of the driver.

9

Programming

You can activate or deactivate the system by means of the multifunction screen configuration menu. The system state is memorised when switching off the ignition.
For more information on access to the parking sensors menu, refer to "Vehicle configuration" or "Vehicle parameters" section for your multifunction screen.

The system will be deactivated automatically when towing a trailer or when a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).

Operating faults

SERVICE If there is an operating fault, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep) and a message in the multifunction screen.

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, frost or snow.

Reversing camera

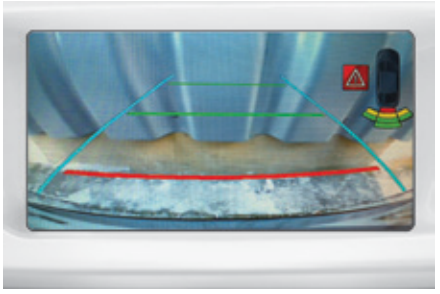


A reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.
The colour image is provided in the navigation screen.

! The reversing camera cannot in any circumstances be a substitute for vigilance on the part of the driver.



The space between the blue lines represents the width of your vehicle except for the door mirrors.



The blue lines represent the general direction of the vehicle.
The red line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper. The audible signal becomes continuous from this limit.
The green lines represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

i Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

9

TOTAL & CITROËN

Partners in performance and protecting the environment

Innovation in the search for performance

For over 40 year, the TOTAL Research and Development departments have developed lubricants for CITROËN, to match the latest technical innovations on CITROËN vehicles, both for competition and for everyday motoring.
For you, this is an assurance that you will obtain the best performance from your engine.

Optimum protection for your engine

By having your CITROËN vehicle serviced with TOTAL lubricants, you are contributing towards improving the life and performance of your engine, while also protecting the environment.



CITROËN

CITROËN prefers TOTAL

TOTAL

Bonnet

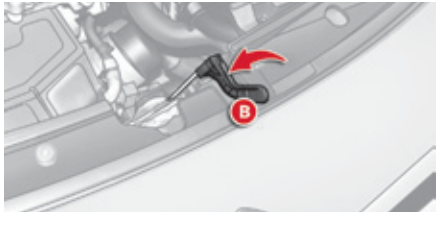
Opening

! Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

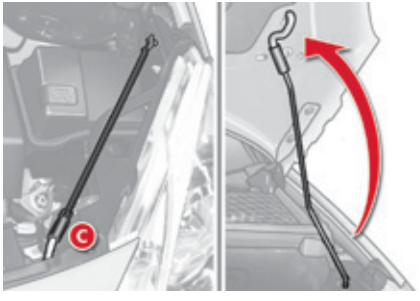
- Open the front left door.
- Pull the interior release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door aperture.



- Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



- Unclip the bonnet stay **C** from its housing, holding it by its foam protection.
- Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.



i The location of the interior release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left door is closed.

! When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care.

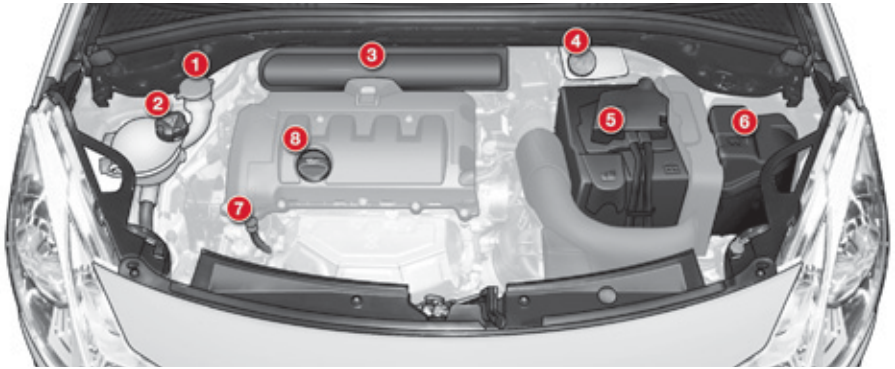
! To avoid damaging the electric units, the use of a high pressure jet wash under the bonnet is strictly prohibited.

Closing

- Take the stay out of the support notch.
- Clip the stay in its housing.
- Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully latched.

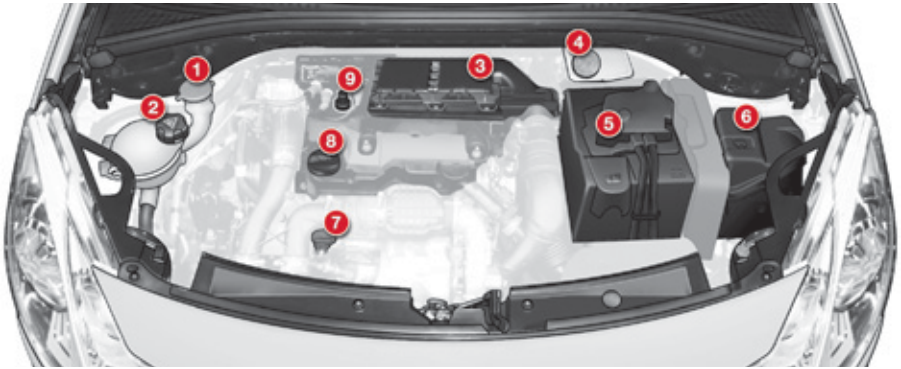
Petrol engines

1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Coolant header tank.
3. Air filter.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery.
6. Fusebox.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.



Diesel engines

1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Coolant header tank.
3. Air filter.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery.
6. Fusebox.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Priming pump (on fuel filter).



Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Engine oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles so equipped, or using the dipstick.

i To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

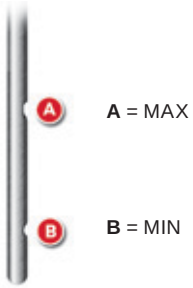
Checking using the dipstick

Refer to the "Petrol engine" or "Diesel engine" section for the location of the dipstick in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.

☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.

☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX

B = MIN

If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping-up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

Refer to the "Petrol engine" or "Diesel engine" section for the location of the oil filler cap in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.
In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Changing the coolant

The coolant does not have to be replaced at routine services.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash fluid level



Top up the level when necessary.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up or replaced with plain water.
In wintry conditions, it is recommended that you use an ethyl alcohol or methanol based fluid.

Additive level (Diesel with particle filter)

According to your version of instrument panel, the additive reservoir low level is indicated by:



- fixed illumination of the particle filter warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal,

or

SERVICE - fixed illumination of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Checks

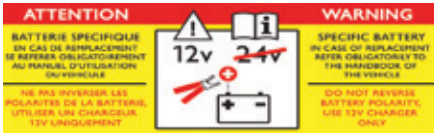
Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "12 V battery" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a specific 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification. The involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.
A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter (Diesel)

According to your version of instrument panel, the start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by:



- fixed illumination of the particle filter warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal,

or

SERVICE

- temporary illumination of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that there is a risk of blockage of the particle filter.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
If the warning lamp stays on, refer to the "Additive level" section.

i On a new vehicle, the first operations of regeneration of the particle filter may be accompanied by the smell of "burning", which is perfectly normal.
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

Electronic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

! After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

Fuel tank

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 50 litres (petrol) or 46 litres (Diesel) or 37 litres (LPG); (Depending on version: approximately 30 litres (petrol or Diesel)).

Low fuel level

When the fuel tank minimum level is reached this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel. When it first comes on there remains **approximately 5 litres** of fuel in the tank.

You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.
If you run out of fuel (Diesel), refer also to the "Checks" section.

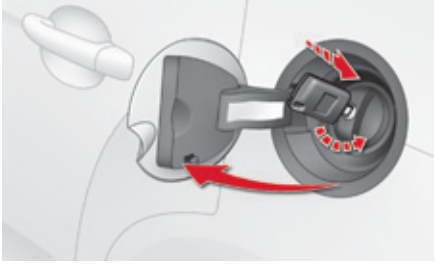
Filling

A label affixed to the inside of the flap reminds you of the type of fuel to be used depending on your engine.
Additions of fuel must be of at least 7 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

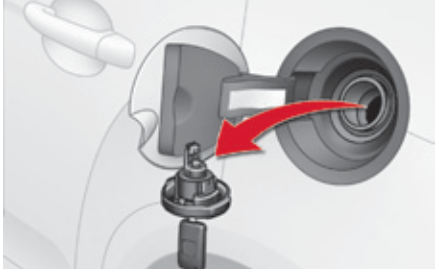
! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

To fill the tank safely:

- ☞ **the engine must be switched off,**
- ☞ open the fuel filler flap,
- ☞ insert the key in the cap, then turn it to the left,



- ☞ remove the cap and hook it onto the clip located on the inside of the flap,
- ☞ fill the tank, **but do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the pump**; this could cause malfunctions.



When you have filled the tank:

- ☞ put the cap back in place,
- ☞ turn the key to the right, then remove it from the cap,
- ☞ close the flap.

i The key cannot be removed from the lock until the cap is refitted.
Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.

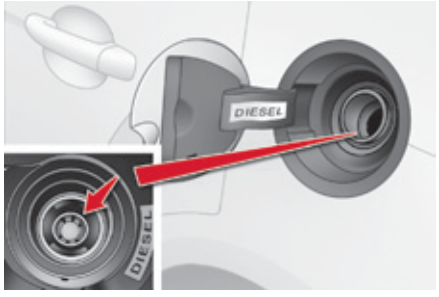
Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with E10 bio-petrol (containing 10 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.
E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).
B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)*



Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation

When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you want to travel.

* According to country of sale.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

If your vehicle has an HDi engine, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel. This system consists of a priming pump and a transparent pipe under the bonnet.

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- Depending on version, unclip the cover to gain access to the priming pump.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump until resistance is felt (could be from the first application) and fuel appears in the transparent pipe with the green connector.
- Operate the starter until the engine starts.
- Depending on version, put the cover back in position and clip it in place.
- Close the bonnet.

If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not try again.
Operate the priming pump again, then the starter.

BlueHDi 100 engine

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- Repeat the operation 10 times.
- Operate the starter to run the engine.

AdBlue® additive and SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel engines

To assure respect for the environment and conformity with the new Euro 6 emissions standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with an effective system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (FAP) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

Presentation of the SCR system

Using an additive called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrous oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.

The AdBlue® additive is held in a special tank located under the boot at the rear of the vehicle. It has a capacity of 17 litres: this provides a driving range of about 12 500 miles (20 000 km), after which an alert is triggered warning you when the reserve remaining is enough for just 1 500 miles (2 400 km).

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® additive tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage between two services is greater than 12 500 miles (20 000 km), we recommend that you go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the necessary top-up carried out.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: you vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1 100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

Range indicators

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.
In the event of simultaneous system fault and low AdBlue® level, the shortest range figure is the one displayed.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the range indicator will appear either:
- in the instrument panel screen (versions without audio system), or
- in the multifunction screen.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1 500 miles (2 400 km)
When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.

For vehicles without a multifunction screen, the range indicator appears in the instrument panel screen.

Remaining range between 350 and 1500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)



When switching on the ignition, the UREA warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance, indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented - (For example "NO START IN 900 miles" means that "Starting will be prevented in 900 miles).
When driving, this display appears every 150 miles (300 km) until the additive tank has been topped-up.
Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
Refer to the "Topping-up" section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented - (For example "NO START IN 350 miles" means "Starting will be prevented in 350 miles").
When driving, this display appears every 30 seconds until the additive tank has been topped-up.
Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
Refer to the "Topping-up" section.
Otherwise you will not be able to restart your engine.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue® additive



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and 0 km or miles - ("NO START IN 0 miles" means "Starting prevented").
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.

! To be able to start the engine, we recommend that you call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the top-up required. If you carry out the top-up yourself, it is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the additive tank.
Refer to the "Topping-up" section.

For vehicles fitted a multifunction screen, the range indicator appears in the screen.

Remaining range between 350 and 1500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)



When switching on the ignition, the UREA warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 900 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 200 miles (300 km) until the additive tank has been topped-up.
Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
Refer to the "Topping-up" section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 350 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds until the additive tank has been topped-up.
Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
Refer to the "Topping-up" section.
Otherwise you will not be able to restart your engine.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue® additive



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented".
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.

! To be able to start the engine, we recommend that you call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the top-up required. If you carry out the top-up yourself, it is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.
Refer to the "Topping-up" section.

In the event of a fault with the the SCR emissions control system

A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

For vehicles without a multifunction screen, the range indicator appears in the instrument panel screen.

In the event of the detection of a fault



The UREA, SERVICE and diagnostic warning lamps comes on, accompanied by an audible signal.
The alert is triggered when driving, when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after a self diagnosis test of the SCR emissions control system.

During an authorised driving phase
(between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance, indicating the remaining range express in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented -
(e.g.: "NO START IN 350 miles" means "Starting will be prevented in 350 miles").
While driving, this display appears every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

For vehicles fitted a multifunction screen, the range indicator appears in the screen.

Starting prevented



Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the temporary display of "NO START IN" and 0 miles or kilometres - ("NO START IN 0 miles" means "Starting prevented").

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of the detection of a fault



The UREA, SERVICE and diagnostic warning lamps comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message "Emissions fault".
The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message
(e.g.: "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 150 miles") indicating the remaining range express in miles or kilometres.
While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

Starting prevented



Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Freezing of the AdBlue® additive

The AdBlue® additive freezes at temperatures below around -11°C. The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Topping-up the AdBlue® additive

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top-up the additive between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement.
You can got to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If you envisage topping-up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

Precautions in use

The AdBlue® additive is an urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes.
If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high ambient temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the product. Ammonia vapour has en irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original bottle.
Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

Use only AdBlue® additive that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

! Never dilute the additive with water.
Never pour the additive into the Diesel fuel tank.



AdBlue®

The supply in a non-drip bottle simplifies toping-up. You can obtain 1.89 litre (half a US gallon) bottles from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Never top-up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.
Under these conditions, the additive can be kept for at least a year.
If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

! Never store bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

Procedure

Before topping-up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.
In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise, by freezing, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.



☞ For access to the AdBlue® tank, raise the boot carpet then, depending on equipment, lift out the spare wheel and/or the storage box.

☞ Without pressing, turn the black cap a quarter turn anti-clockwise and lift it off.

☞ Turn the blue cap a 6th of a turn anti-clockwise.
☞ Lift off the cap.



☞ Obtain a bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, read carefully the instructions on use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

! **Important:** if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty - which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine, you must add at least 3.8 litres (so two 1.89 litre bottles).

☞ After emptying the bottle, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

! If any additive is split or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the additive has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank and turn it a 6th of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
☞ Refit the black cap and turn it a quarter of a turn clockwise without pressing. Ensure that the indicator on the cap lines up with the indicator on the support.
☞ Depending on equipment, return the spare wheel and/or the storage box to the bottom of the boot.
☞ Refit the boot carpet and close the tailgate.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of additive**, you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle or introducing the key into the ignition switch**.
Switch on the ignition, then, after 10 seconds, start the engine.

Never dispose of AdBlue® additive bottles in the household waste. Place them in a special container provided this purpose or take them to your dealer.

Temporary puncture repair kit

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge which permits **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

Composition of the kit



1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of a compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair or for inflating a small inflatable accessory.

The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure



- Switch off the ignition.
- Secure the speed limit sticker inside the vehicle.



- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the pipe from the compressor to the sealant cartridge.
- Turn the the sealant cartridge and secure it in the cut-out provided on the compressor.



- Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.
- Connect the hose from the sealant cartridge to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



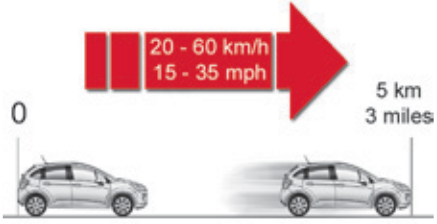
- Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position).
- Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- Connect compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch on the ignition.



- Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "**I**" position and leave it running until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bar.
The sealant product is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing and stains).

! If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

i Take care, the sealant product is harmful (e.g. ethylene-glycol, colophony...) if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date is marked on the cartridge.
After use, do not discard the cartridge by the roadside, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Don't forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



- Place the switch in the "**O**" position.
- Remove the kit.
- Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

Checking / adjusting tyre pressures



You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and if necessary adjust the tyre pressures.

- Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.



- Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.
- Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch on the ignition.



- Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "**I**" position and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label.
  To deflate: press the black button on the compressor pipe, at the valve connector.
- Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "**O**" position.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

Tyre under-inflation detection

After repair of the tyre, the warning lamp will remain on until the system is reinitialised.
For more information, refer to the "Under-inflation detection" section.

Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
Refer to the "Under-inflation detection" section.

Changing a wheel

Procedure for changing a faulty wheel for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the tools



The tools are stowed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ remove the polystyrene storage box,
- ☞ unclip and remove the box containing the tools.



List of tools

1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and removal of the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising of the vehicle.
3. "Bolt cover" tool.
   For removing the bolt protectors (covers) on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security wheel bolts (located in the glove box).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" wheel bolts (if your vehicle has them).

! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for other purposes.
Never use a jack other than the one listed by the manufacturer. If the vehicle does not have one, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain a jack intended for the the vehicle.

Wheel with trim

When removing the wheel, first detach the trim using the wheelbrace **1** pulling at the valve passage hole.
When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its cut-out at the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

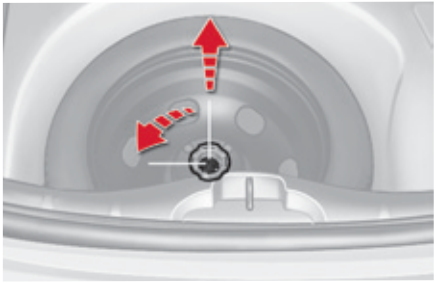
Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.
According to country, the spare wheel may be steel or of the "space-saver" type.
To gain access to it, refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools" on the previous page.

Fitting the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, it is normal to notice, when tightening the bolts on fitting, that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.



Taking out the wheel

- ☞ Unscrew the yellow central bolt.
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.



Putting the wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Unscrew the yellow central bolt by a few turns then put it in place in the centre of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten fully until the central bolt clicks to retain the wheel correctly.



- ☞ Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.
- ☞ Put the polystyrene storage box back in place.
- ☞ Refit the boot floor carpet by lightly folding it in two (refer to the "Boot fittings" section).

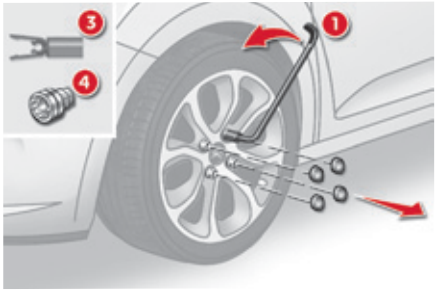
! On vehicles equipped with a "space-saver" type spare wheel, the punctured wheel cannot be stowed in place of the "space-saver" wheel.

Removing a wheel



Parking the vehicle

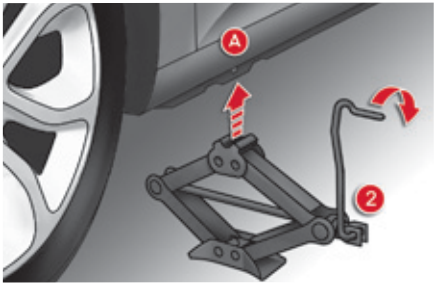
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and not slippery.
Apply the parking brake, switch off the ignition and engage first gear* to lock the wheels.
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
You must ensure that the occupants get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.



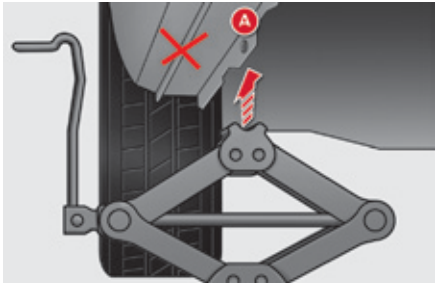
List of operations

- Remove the bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool **3** (with alloy wheels only).
- Fit the security bolt socket **4** on the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt (if your vehicle has them).
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.

* position **R** for an electronic gearbox;
position **P** for an automatic gearbox.



☞ Position the foot of the jack **2** on the ground, ensuring that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking points provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



☞ Extend the jack **2** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used. The vehicle's contact area **A** or **B** must be fully engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.



☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.
☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
☞ Remove the wheel.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack could slip or drop - Risk of injury!
Position the jack only at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the vehicle's contact area is positioned centrally on the head of the jack. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack dropping - Risk of injury!

Fitting a wheel



After changing a wheel

To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.

When using the "space-saver" type temporary use spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Do not drive with more than one temporary use spare wheel fitted to the vehicle at one time.



List of operations

- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt (if your vehicle has them) using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security bolt socket **4**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **2** and remove it.



- Tighten the security bolt (if your vehicle has them) using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security bolt socket **4**.
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.
- Refit the bolt covers on each of the bolts.
- Stow the tools in the box.

Changing a bulb

! The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:

- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

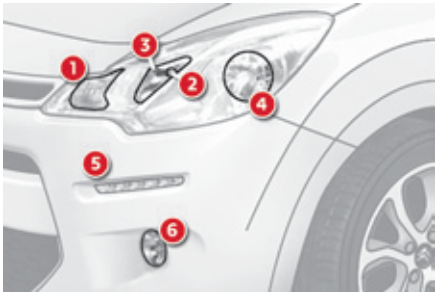
! Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).

- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

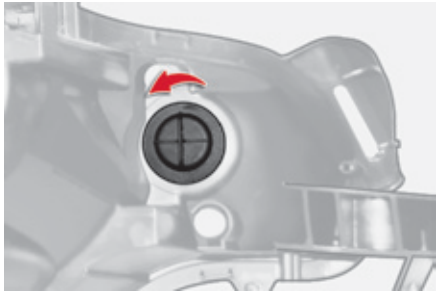
It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Front lamps



1. **Direction indicators (PY21W amber).**
2. **Sidelamps (W5W).**
3. **Main beam headlamps (H1-55W).**
4. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7-55W).**
5. **LED daytime running lamps.**
6. **Front foglamps (PSX24W).**



Changing direction indicator bulbs

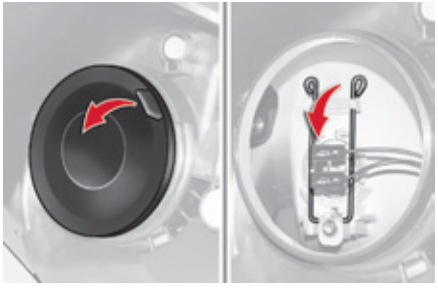
Rapid flashing of the direction indicator warning lamp (right or left) indicates the failure of a bulb on that side.

- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
- Pull out the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specifications and colour.

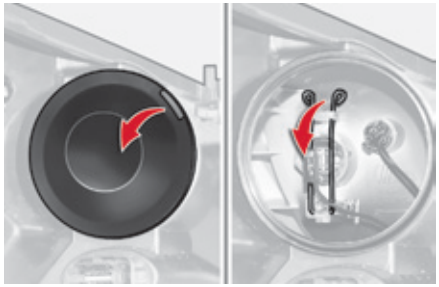
When refitting, close the protective cover carefully to preserve the sealing of the headlamp.



Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs

- Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Spread the springs to release the bulb.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

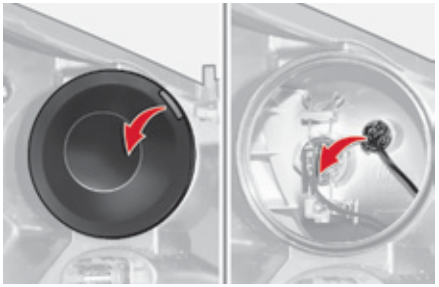
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Changing main beam headlamp bulbs

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Spread the springs to release the bulb.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and change it.

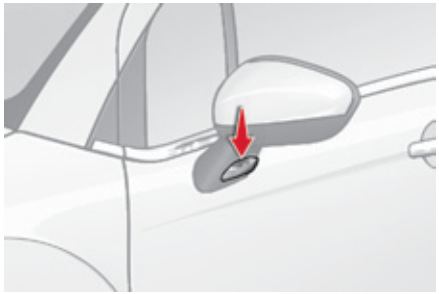
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Changing sidelamp bulbs

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- ☞ Pull the bulb holder pressing on the tabs on both sides.
- ☞ Pull the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Changing integrated direction indicator side repeaters

- Insert a screwdriver towards the centre of the repeater between the repeater and the base of the door mirror.
- Tilt the screwdriver to extract the repeater and remove it.
- Disconnect the repeater connector.
- Replace the module.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain a replacement side repeater module.



Changing front foglamp bulbs

- Access to the front foglamp is through the aperture below the bumper.
- Disconnect the black bulb holder connector, by pressing on the tab at the top.
- Remove the bulb-holder by pressing on the 2 clips (at the top and the bottom).
- Replace the module.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

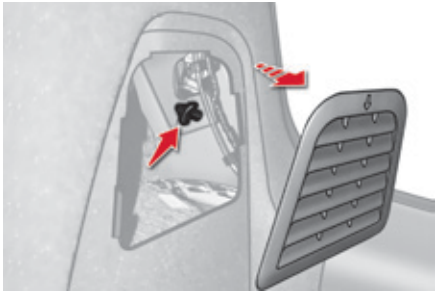
To obtain a replacement module, contact your CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If you experience any difficulty in replacing bulbs, contact your CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear lamps



1. **Brake / sidelamps (P21/5W).**
2. **Direction indicators (PY21W amber)**
3. **Foglamp, right-hand side (PR21W red)**
   Reversing lamp, left-hand side (P21W).

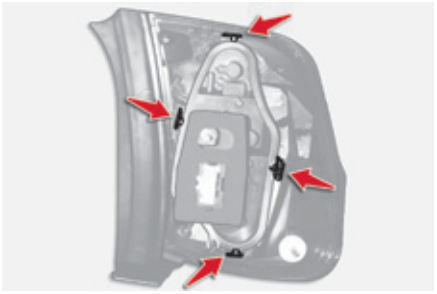
Amber or red bulbs, such as those for the direction indicators and rear foglamp, must be replaced by bulbs of the same rating and colour.
The lamps on the tailgate are dummy units. They are there for aesthetic purposes only.



Changing bulbs

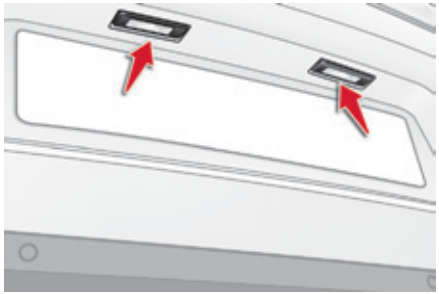
These four bulbs are changed from inside the boot:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ remove the access flap from the corresponding side trim panel,
- ☞ unscrew the butterfly nut securing the lamp unit,
- ☞ unclip the lamp unit connector,
- ☞ extract the lamp unit carefully pulling in its middle towards the outside,



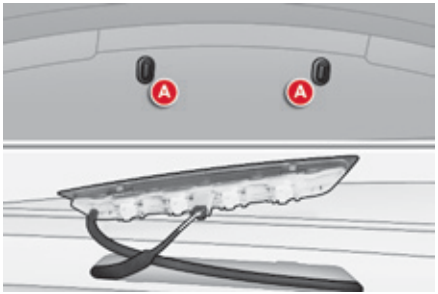
- ☞ spread the four tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.
Take care to engage the lamp unit in its guides, while keeping it in line with the vehicle.



Changing the number plate lamp bulbs (W5W)

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the outer holes of the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards to unclip.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.



Third brake lamp (4 W5W bulbs)

- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Remove the plugs **A** on the inner panel.
- ☞ Push on the centre of the lamp using two screwdrivers to lever it outwards.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector and if necessary the screenwash pipe from the lamp.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder for the faulty bulb a quarter of a turn.
- ☞ Pull out the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Interior lighting

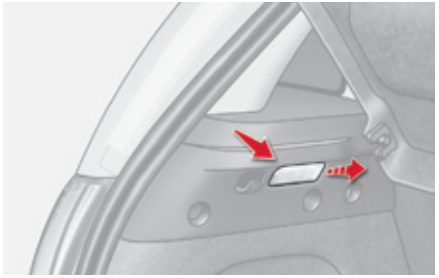


Interior lamp (1 / W5W)

Unclip the cover of the interior lamp **1** with a thin screwdriver, close to the button, to access the faulty bulb.

Side reading lamps (2 / W5W)

Unclip the cover of the reading lamp **2** with a small screwdriver at the switch end for access to the faulty bulb.



Boot lamp (W5W)

Unclip the unit by pushing it from the rear.



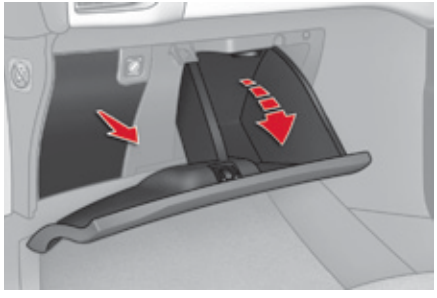
Central storage lamps (W5W)

Unclip the lamp for access to the bulb.

Changing a fuse

Procedure for replacing a faulty fuse with a new fuse to rectify a failure of the corresponding function.

Access to the tools



The extraction tweezer and the spare fuse storage locations are fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.
For access to them:

- ☞ open the glove box lid,
- ☞ unclip the fusebox cover by pulling at the side,
- ☞ remove the cover completely,
- ☞ remove the tweezer.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse, the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified.

- ☞ Identify the faulty fuse by checking the condition of its filament.



Good



Failed

- ☞ Use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing.
- ☞ Always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating.
- ☞ Check that the number marked on the box, the rating marked on the fuse and the tables below all agree.

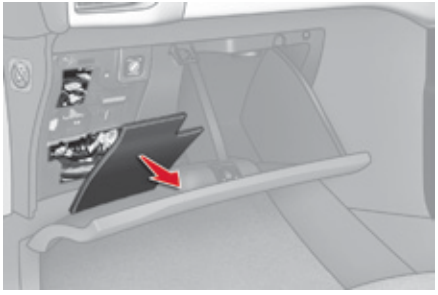
Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

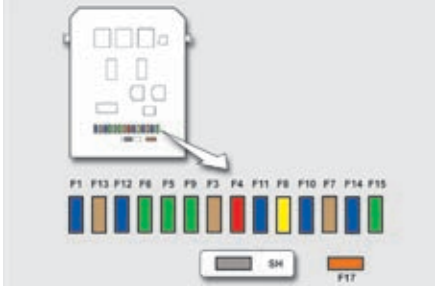
Dashboard fusebox

The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).



Access to the fuses

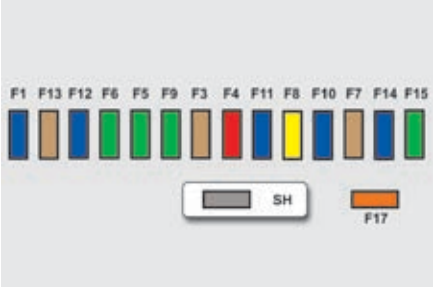
☞ See "Access to the tools".



Fuse tables

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
FH36	5 A	Trailer relay unit.
FH37	-	Not used.
FH38	20 A	HiFi amplifier.
FH39	-	Not used.
FH40	40 A	Trailer relay unit.

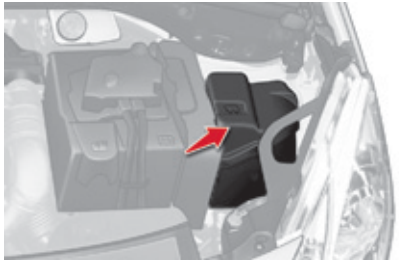
Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	-	Not used.
F2	-	Not used.
F3	5 A	Airbags and pretensioners control unit.
F4	10 A	Air conditioning, clutch switch, electrochromatic mirror, particle filter pump (Diesel), diagnostic socket, airflow sensor (Diesel).
F5	30 A	Electric windows panel, passenger's electric window control, front electric window motor.
F6	30 A	Rear electric windows motors and driver's electric window motor.
F7	5 A	Courtesy lamp, side reading lamps.



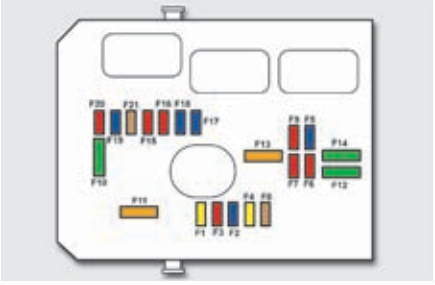
Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F8	20 A	Multifunction screen, audio system, navigation radio, instrument panel with clock, alarm control unit, alarm siren, audio system (after-market), portable navigation system carrier supply.
F9	30 A	Multifunction screen, audio system, navigation audio unit, instrument pnael with clock, alarm control unit, alarm siren, audio system (after-market), 12 V socket, portable navigation support supply, locking.
F10	15 A	Steering mounted controls.
F11	15 A	Ignition, diagnostic socket, automatic gearbox control unit.
F12	15 A	Rain / sunshine sensor, trailer relay unit, driving school module.
F13	5 A	Main stop switch, engine relay unit, electronic gearbox gear lever.
F14	15 A	Parking sensors control unit, airbag control unit, instrument panel, automatic air conditioning, USB Box, HiFi amplifier, reversing camera.
F15	30 A	Locking.
F16	-	Not used.
F17	40 A	Rear screen and door mirrors demisting/defrosting.
SH	-	PARC shunt.

Engine compartment fusebox

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery (left-hand side).



! All work on the fuses in the fusebox at the battery must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

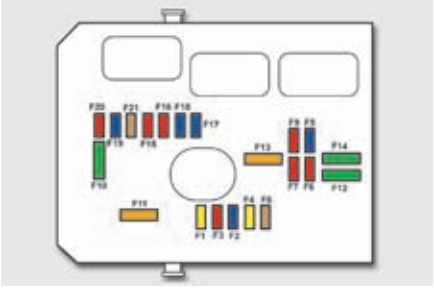


Access to the fuses

- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse (see corresponding paragraph).
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure the sealing of the fusebox.

Fuse table

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	**20 A**	Engine control unit supply, cooling fan unit control relay, multifunction engine control main relay, injection pump (Diesel).
F2	**15 A**	Horn.
F3	**10 A**	Front / rear wash-wipe.
F4	**20 A**	Daytime running lamps, LED daytime running lamps.
F5	**15 A**	Diesel heater (Diesel), particle filter additive pump (Diesel), air flow sensor (Diesel), fuel pump (1.1i and 1.4i), blow-by heater and electrovalves (VTi).
F6	**10 A**	ABS/ESP control unit, secondary stop switch.
F7	**10 A**	Electric power steering, automatic gearbox.
F8	**25 A**	Starter control.
F9	**10 A**	Switching and protection unit (Diesel).
F10	**30 A**	Fuel heater (Diesel), blow-by heater (1.1i, 1.4i and Diesel), fuel pump (VTi), injectors and ignition coils (petrol), electronic thermostat and canister purge electrovalve (1.1i and 1.4i).
F11	**40 A**	Heater blower.



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F12	30 A	Windscreen wipers slow / fast speed.
F13	40 A	Built-in systems interface supply (ignition positive).
F14	30 A	Valvetronic supply (VTi).
F15	10 A	Right-hand main beam headlamps.
F16	10 A	Left-hand main beam headlamps.
F17	15 A	Left-hand dipped beam headlamps.
F18	15 A	Right-hand dipped beam headlamps.
F19	15 A	Oxygen sensors and electrovalves (VTi), electrovalves (Diesel), EGR electrovalve (Diesel).
F20	10 A	Pumps, electronic thermostat (VTi), water in fuel sensor (Diesel).
F21	5 A	Fan assembly control supply, ABS/ESP.

Table of maxi-fuses

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
MF1*	**60 A**	Fan assembly.
MF2*	**30 A**	ABS / ESP pump.
MF3*	**30 A**	ABS / ESP electrovalves.
MF4*	**60 A**	Built-in Systems Interface (BSI) supply.
MF5*	**60 A**	Built-in Systems Interface (BSI) supply.
MF6*	**-**	Not used.
MF7*	**80 A**	Dashboard fusebox.
MF8*	**-**	Not used.

* The maxi-fuses provide additional protection for the electrical systems. All work on the maxi-fuses must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing a front or rear wiper blade

Procedure for replacing a worn wiper blade with a new one without the use of tools.

Before removing a front wiper blade

- ☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades in the vertical position.

This position must be used in order to avoid damaging the wiper blade and the bonnet.

Removal

- ☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
- ☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Fitting

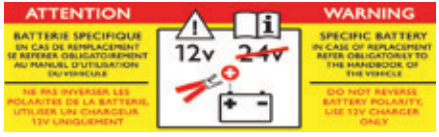
- ☞ At the front, check the size of the wiper blade as the shorter blade is fitted to the passenger side of the vehicle.
- ☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
- ☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

After fitting a front wiper blade

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

Battery

Procedure for charging your battery when it is flat or for starting the engine using another battery.



! The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification; the involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.
Failure to observe this recommendation may cause premature wear of the battery.

i After refitting the battery by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, the Stop & Start system will only be active after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the climatic conditions and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Access to the battery



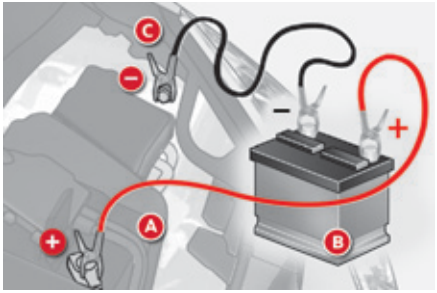
The battery is located under the bonnet.
To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ secure the bonnet stay,
- ☞ lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.

Starting using another battery

When the battery on your vehicle is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump leads.

First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
Do not try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.



- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** (or earth point on the other vehicle).
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal **C** (or the engine mounting) of the broken-down vehicle.
- Start the engine of the other vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter of the broken-down vehicle and let the engine run.
  If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- Wait until the engine returns to idle, then disconnect the jump leads in reverse order.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

- Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.

Do not disconnect the battery to charge it.

Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

! Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion and fire.
Do not try to charge a frozen battery; the battery must first be thawed out to avoid the risk of explosion. If the battery has been frozen, before charging have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.
Do not reverse the polarity and use only a 12 V charger.
Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.
Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.
Wash your hands afterwards.

! Do not push the vehicle to start the engine if you have an electronic or automatic gearbox.

! Some functions are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the period of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio equipment, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined period of thirty minutes.

i This period may be greatly reduced if the battery is not fully charged.

Switching to economy mode

Once this period has elapsed, a message appears in the screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

i If the telephone is being used at the same time, it will be interrupted after 10 minutes.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically the next time the vehicle is driven.

☞ In order to resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for a few minutes.

The time available to you will then be double the period for which the engine is left running. However, this period will always be between five and thirty minutes.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.

11

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size.
185/65 R15	9 mm
195/55 R16	
205/45 R17	7 mm

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

Advice on installation

- If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ remove the polystyrene storage box,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing arm available...

Towing your vehicle



- On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing arm.
- Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** for an electronic or automatic gearbox).
- Unlock the steering by turning the key one notch in the ignition switch and release the parking brake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently and drive for a short distance only.

i Failure to observe this special condition could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission...) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

Towing another vehicle



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing arm.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently and drive for a short distance only.

Towing a trailer

Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.



We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.

Driving advice

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical data" section for details of the weights and towed loads which apply to your vehicle.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

11

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.
As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.
In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.
To avoid overheating of the brakes on a long mountain type of descent, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.

The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

Petrol engines and gearboxes

Engine	VTi 68	PureTech 68	VTi 82		PureTech 82
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5 speed)	Manual (5-speed)	ETG electronic (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)
Model code: SC...	ZMZ0	ZMZ 6	HMZ0	HMZ0/P	HMZ 6
Cubic capacity (cc)	999	999	1 199		1 199
Bore x stroke (mm)	71 x 84.1	71 x 84.1	75 x 90.5		75 x 90.5
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	50	60	60		60
Max power engine speed (rpm)	6 000	6 000	5 750		5 760
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	95	95	118		118
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	3 000	3 000	2 750		2 750
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded		Unleaded
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	Yes		Yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) with filter replacement	3.25	3.25	3.25		3.25

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.

Petrol engines and gearboxes

Engine	PureTech 82 S&S	VTi 95	PureTech 110 S&S	VTi 120	
Gearbox	ETG electronic (5-speed)	ETG electronic (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Automatic (4-speed)
Model code: SC...	HMZ 6 / PS	8FP0/P	HNZ 6 / S	5FS0	5FS9
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 199	1 397	1 199	1 598	
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 90.5	77 x 75	75 x 90.5	77 x 85.8	
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	60	70	81	88	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	5 760	6 000	5 500	6 000	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	118	136	205	160	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	2 750	4 000	1 500	4 250	
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Engine oil capacity (in litres) with filter replacement	3.25	4.25	3.5	4.25	

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.

Petrol weights and towed loads (in kg)

Engine	VTi 68	PureTech 68	VTi 82		PureTech 82
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	ETG electronic (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)
Model code: SC...	ZMZ0	ZMZ 6	HMZ0	HMZ0/P	HMZ 6
- Unladen weight	973	973	975	1 060	975
- Kerb weight	1 048	1 048	1 050	1 135	1 050
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 500	1 520	1 511	1 515	1 525
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	1 950	1 970	2 311	2 315	2 325
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 12 % gradient	450	450	800	800	800
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	775	775	1 100	1 100	1 100
- Unbraked trailer	450	450	520	520	520
- Recommended nose weight	46	46	46	46	46

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning: towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Petrol weights and towed loads (in kg)

Engine	PureTech 82 S&S	VTi 95	PureTech 110 S&S	VTi 120	
Gearbox	ETG electronic (5-speed)	ETG electronic (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Automatic (4-speed)
Model code: SC...	HMZ 6 / PS	8FP0/P	HNZ 6 / S	5FS0	5FS9
- Unladen weight	980	1 079	1 070	1 075	1 089
- Kerb weight	1 055	1 154	1 145	1 150	1 164
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 541	1 581	1 598	1 579	1 612
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 041	2 481	2 498	2 479	2 512
- Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12 % gradient	500	900	900	900	900
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	800	1 150	1 150	1 150	1 150
- Unbraked trailer	500	570	570	570	570
- Recommended nose weight	46	46	46	46	46

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning: towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

LPG engine and gearbox

Engine	**1.4 i**
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)
Model code: SC...	KFT0/GPL KFT0/1GPL
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 360
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 77
Max. power: EU standard (kW)*	51.5 / 54
Max. power speed (rpm)	5 200 / 5 200
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	115 / 118
Max. torque speed (rpm)	3 300 / 3 300
Fuel	LPG / Unleaded
Catalytic converter	Yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) with filter replacement	3.0

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information on the operation and use of your LPG vehicle, refer to the specific insert attached to the other vehicle documents.

LPG weights and towed loads (in kg)

Engine	**1.4 i**
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)
Model code: SC...	KFT0/GPL KFT0/1GPL
- Unladen weight	1 070
- Kerb weight	1 145
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 529
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % slope	2 329
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 12 % slope	1 000
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 000
- Unbraked trailer	500
- Recommended nose weight	44

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load..

Diesel engines and gearboxes

Engine	HDi 70 FAP	e-HDi 70 FAP	HDi 75	BlueHDi 75	HDi 90
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	ETG electronic (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)
Model code: SC...	8HR4	8HP4/PS	9HK0	BHW 6	9HJ0
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 398	1 398	1 560	1 560	1 560
Bore x stroke (mm)	73.7 x 82	73.7 x 82	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3
Max. power: EU standard (kW)*	50	50	55	55	68
Max. power engine speed (rpm)	4 000	4 000	4 000	3 500	4 000
Max. torque: EU standard (Nm)	160	160	185	233	230
Max. torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750	1 750	1 500	1 750	1 750
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Particle filter (FAP)	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No
Engine oil capacity (in litres) with filter replacement	3.75	3.75	3.75	3.75	3.75

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: e-HDi model fitted with Stop & Start.

Diesel engines and gearboxes

Engine	HDi 90 FAP	e-HDi 90 FAP		BlueHDi 100	e-HDi 115 FAP
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	ETG electronic (6-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
Model code: SC...	9HP0	9HPK/S	9HP8/PS	BHY 6 / S	9HR8/S
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560	1 560		1 560	1 560
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3		75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3
Max. power: EU standard (kW)*	68	68		73	84
Max. power engine speed (rpm)	4 000	4 000		3 750	3 600
Max. torque: EU standard (Nm)	230	230		254	270
Max. torque speed (rpm)	1 750	1 750		1 750	1 750
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel		Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes
Particle filter (FAP)	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) with filter replacement	3.75	3.75		3.75	3.75

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: e-HDi model fitted with Stop & Start.

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Engine	HDi 70 FAP	e-HDi 70 FAP	HDi 75	BlueHDi 75	HDi 90
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	ETG electronic (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)
Model code: SC...	8HR4	8HP4/PS	9HK0	BHW 6	9HJ0
- Unladen weight	1 070	1 080	1 118	1 080	1 142
- Kerb weight	1 145	1 155	1 193	1 155	1 217
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 581	1 610	1 592	1 645	1 605
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 281	2 310	2 492	2 545	2 505
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on 12 % gradient	700	700	900	900	900
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer with the GTW limit)	950	950	1 150	1 150	1 150
- Unbraked trailer	570	570	570	570	570
- Recommended nose weight	46	46	46	46	46

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning: towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

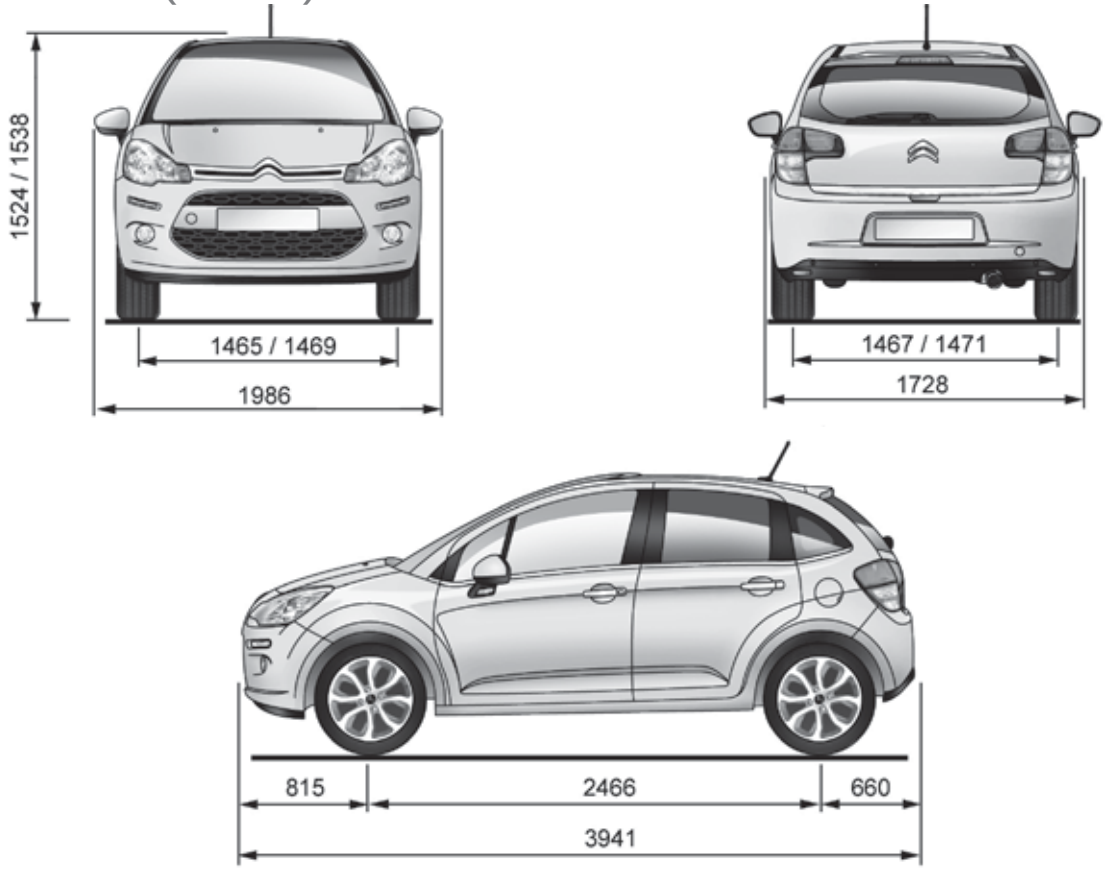
Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Engine	HDi 90 FAP	e-HDi 90 FAP		BlueHDi 100	e-HDi 115 FAP
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	ETG electronic (6-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
Model code: SC...	9HP0	9HPK/S	9HP8/PS	BHY 6 / S	9HR8/S
- Unladen weight	1 080	1 085	1 090	1 085	1 090
- Kerb weight	1 155	1 160	1 165	1 160	1 165
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 608	1 625	1 634	1 652	1 648
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % slope	2 508	2 525	2 534	2 552	2 548
- Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12 % slope	900	900	900	900	900
- Braked trailer* (with transfer of load within the GTW limit)	1 150	1 150	1 150	1 150	1 150
- Unbraked trailer	570	570	570	570	570
- Recommended nose weight	46	46	46	46	46

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning: towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

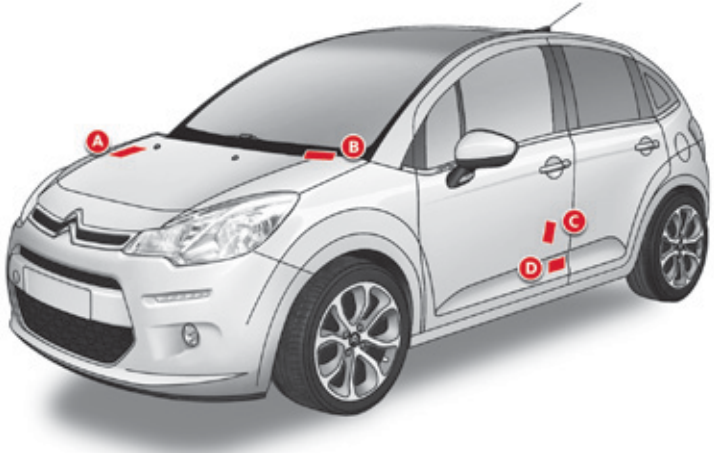
The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Dimensions (in mm)



Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle identification number (VIN) under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the bodywork near the passenger compartment filter.

B. Vehicle identification number on the bottom edge of the windscreen aperture.
This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
The self-destroying label on the left hand centre pillar carries the following information.

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European type approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the gross vehicle weight,
- the gross train weight,
- the maximum front axle weight,
- the maximum rear axle weight.

D. Tyre/paint label.
This label on the left centre pillar, driver's side, carries the following information:

- the tyre pressures, for unladen and laden conditions,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating of the tyre),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

Emergency or assistance call





Localised Emergency Call

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call"* centre.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call.
The green LED goes off.
Pressing this button (at any time) for more than 8 seconds cancels the call.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.
It goes off at the end of the call.

This call is dealt with by the "Localised Emergency Call", which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the appropriate emergency services.
In countries in which a centre is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is dealt with directly by the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your MyCITROËN personal space, via the CITROËN Internet website in your country, accessible on www.citroen.com.

* These services are subject to conditions and availability.
Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange LED flashes: there is a system fault.

If the orange LED is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.
In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been started*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

* These services are subject to conditions and availability.
Consult a CITROËN dealer.

7-inch touch screen tablet

GPS satellite navigation - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	220
Steering mounted controls	222
Menus	223
Navigation	224
Navigation - Guidance	232
Traffic	236
Radio Media	238
Radio	244
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	246
Media	248
Settings	252
Internet	260
Internet browser	261
MirrorLink®	264
Telephone	266
Frequently asked questions	274

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

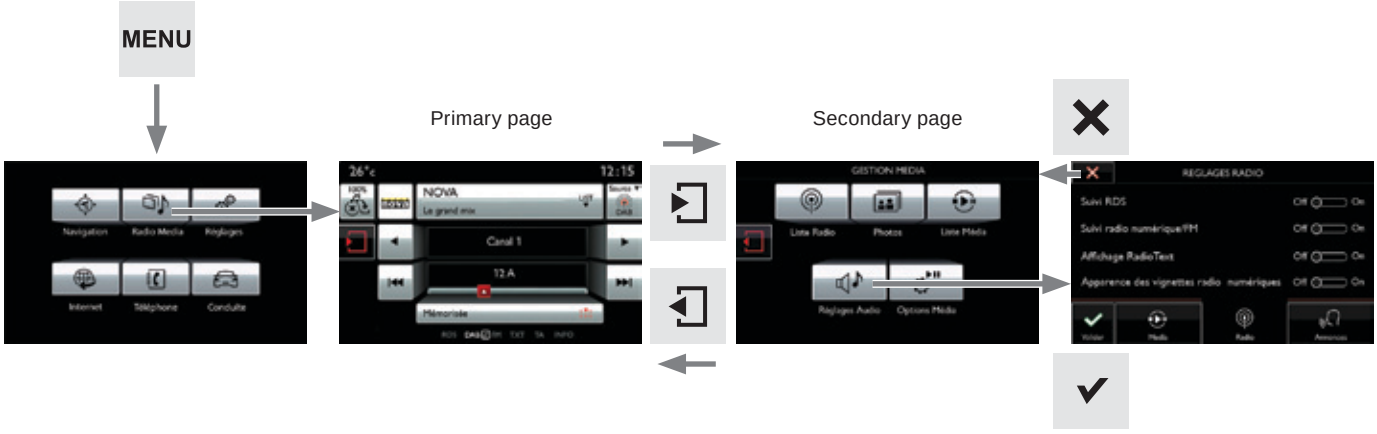
As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. The display of the energy economy mode message signals that the system is about to go into standby. Refer to the Energy economy (mode) section.

First steps

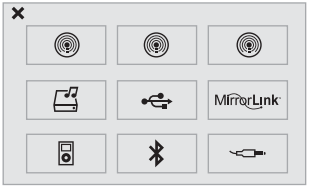
Use the buttons arranged below the touch screen tablet for access to the menu carousel, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.
Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.



Short-cuts: using the touch buttons in the upper band of the touch screen tablet, it is possible to go directly to the selection of audio source, the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- "FM" / "AM" / "DAB"* stations.
- "USB" memory stick.
- Jukebox*, after first copying audio files to the internal memory of the system.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* and audio streaming Bluetooth* (streaming).
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).



MENU Press **Menu** to display the menu carousel.

Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).

Increase volume.

Reduce volume.

Following prolonged operation in very high temperatures, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map...). A simple wipe will not be enough. pressing with more than one finger is not recognised.
The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.

To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) without any additional product.
Do not use pointed objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls





Radio: select the previous/next preset station.
Media: select a genre / artist / folder from the list.
Select the previous/next entry in a menu.



Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.
Media: Select next track.
Media, press and hold: fast forward.
Jump in the list.



Change the audio source.
Confirm a selection.
Call/end call on the telephone.
Press for more than 2 seconds: access to the telephone menu.



Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.
Media: select previous track.
Media, press and hold: fast back.
Jump in the list.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute: cut the sound by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Menus

Navigation

(Depending on equipment)



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

Radio Media



Select radio, the different music sources and view photos.

Settings



Set the sounds and brightness for the instruments and controls.

Internet

(Depending on equipment)



Connect using the "Internet browser". Operate certain applications on your smartphone via "MirrorLink".

Telephone



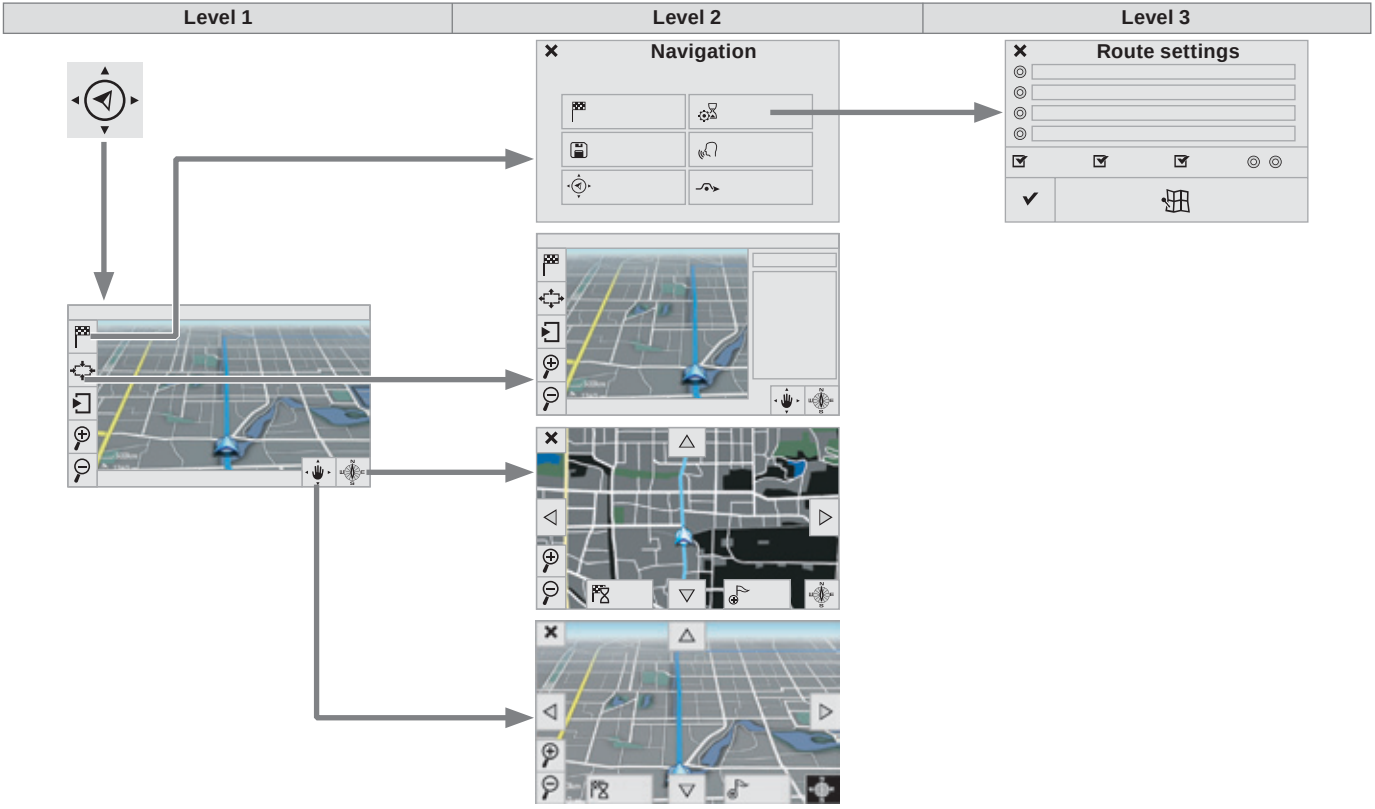
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.

Driving



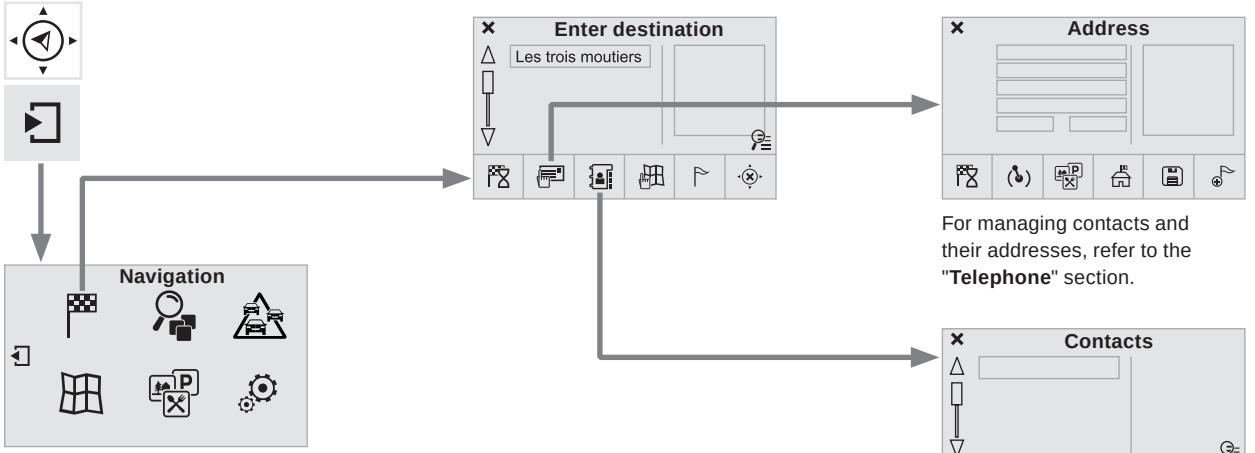
Access the trip computer, activate, deactivate or enter settings for certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation ↓ Settings Navigation		Enter destination			Display recent destinations.
			Calculatory criteria		Fastest	Choose the navigation criteria. The map displays the route chosen according to these criteria.
					Shortest	
					Time/distance	
					Ecological	
					Tolls	
					Ferries	
					Traffic	
					Strict-Close	
					Show route on map	Display the map and start navigation.
					Confirm	Save the options.
			Save current location			Save the current address.
			Stop navigation			Delete the navigation information.
			Voice synthesis			Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names.
			Diversion			Detour from your initial route by a determined distance.
	Navigation					Display in text mode.
						Zoom in.
						Zoom out.
						Display in full screen mode. Use the arrows to move the map.
						Switch to 2D map.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

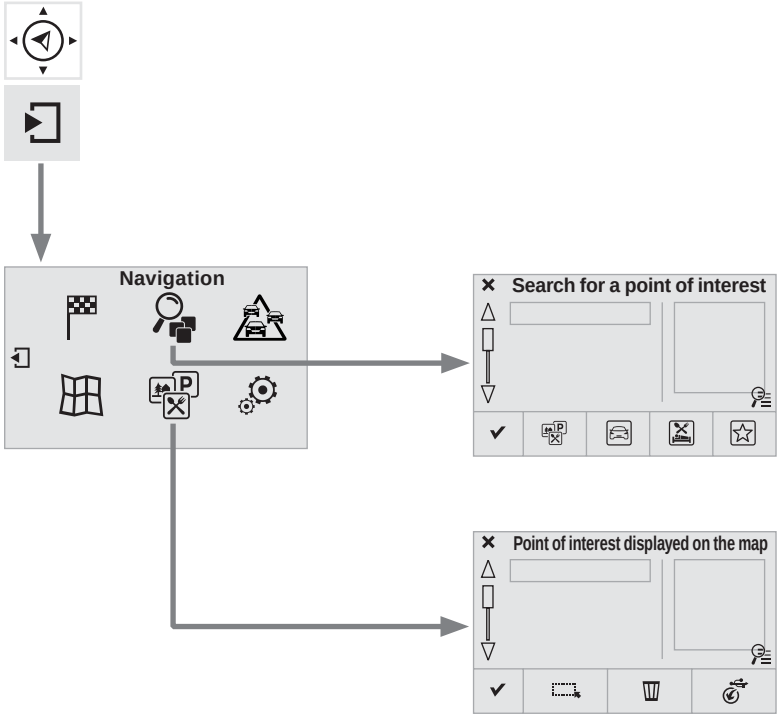


For managing contacts and their addresses, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

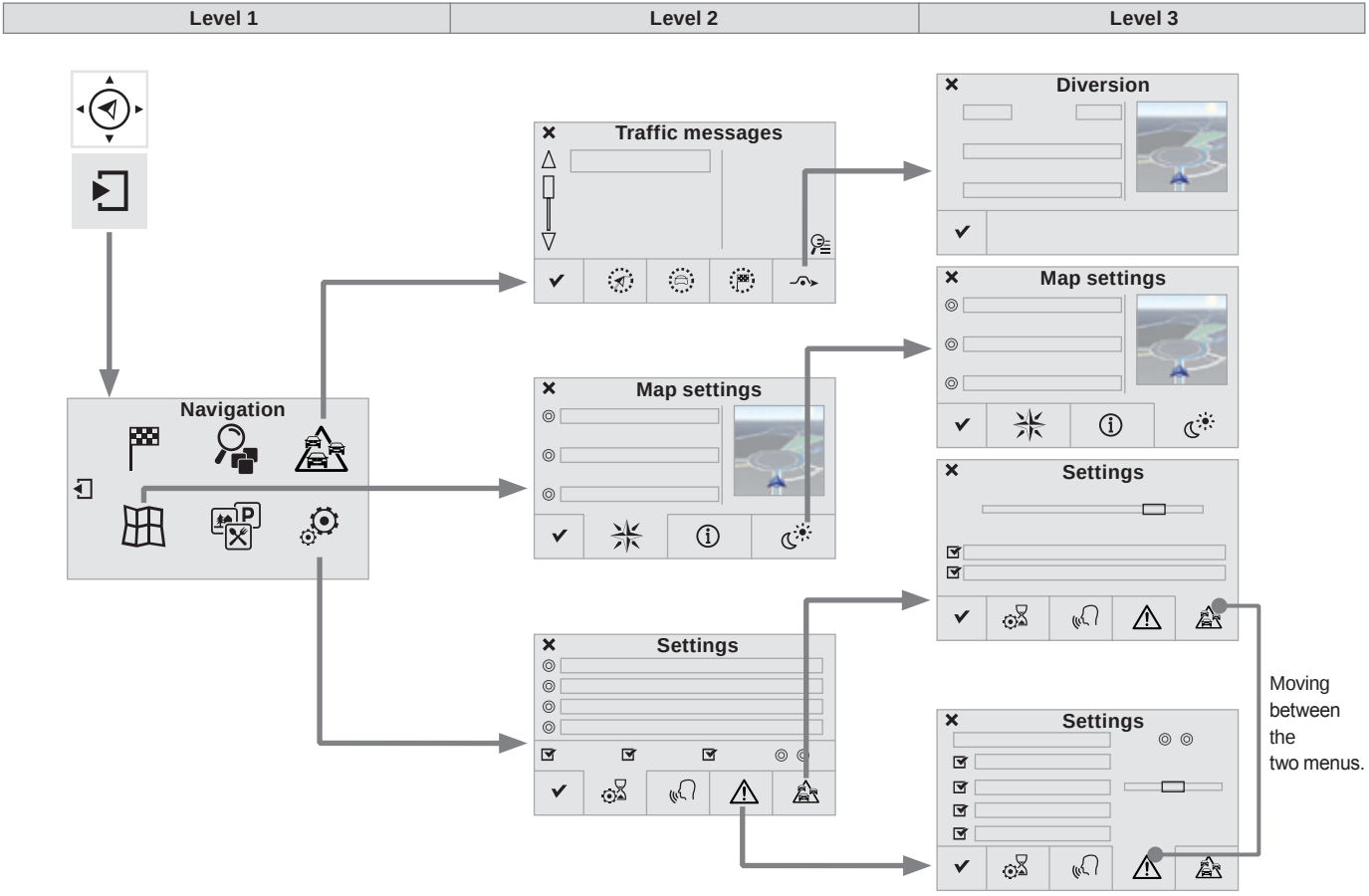
To use the telephone functions, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation Secondary page Enter destination		**Address**		Curr. location	Address settings.
					Points of Interest	
					Town centre	
					Save	Save the current address.
					Add waypoint	Add a waypoint to the route.
					Navigate to	Press to calculate the route.
			Contacts		Addresses	Select a contact then calculate the route.
					View	
					Navigate to	
					Search for contact	
					Call	
			From map			Display the map and zoom to view the roads.
			Itinerary			Create, add or delete a waypoint or view the itinerary.
			Stop			Delete navigation information.
			Navigate to			Press to calculate the route.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
  	**Navigation** → **Secondary page** → **Search for POI**		**All POIs**		List of categories available. After choosing the category, select the points of interest.
			**Garage**		
			**Dining/hotels**		
			**Personal**		
		✔	**Search**		Save the settings.
  	**Navigation** → **Secondary page** → **Show POIs**		**Select all**		Choose the display settings for POIs.
			**Delete**		
			**Import POIs**		
		✔	**Confirm**		Save the options.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Navigation
Traffic messages
Map settings
Settings
Diversion
Map settings
Settings
Settings
Moving between the two menus.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Navigation → Secondary page → Traffic messages	On the route		Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.
	Around vehicle		
	Near destination		
	Detour	◎ Detour over a distance	
		◎ Recalculate route	
	✔ Finish		Save your selections.
Navigation → Secondary page → Map settings	Orientation	◎ Flat view north heading	Choose the display and orientation of the map.
		◎ Flat view vehicle heading	
		◎ Perspective view	
	Maps		
	Aspect	◎ "Day" map colour	
		◎ "Night" map colour	
		◎ Automatic day/night	
	✔ Confirm		Save the settings.
Navigation → Secondary page → Settings	Route settings		Enter settings and choose the volume for the voice and announcement of street names.
	Voice		
	Alert!		
	Traffic options		
	✔ Confirm		Save your selections.

Navigation - Guidance

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

Select "**Address**".



Select the "**Country:**" from the list offered, then in the same way the "**City:**" or its post code, the "**Road:**", the "**N°:**". Confirm each time.

Select "**Save**" to save the address entered as a contact entry.
The system allows up to 200 entries.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Choose the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**" or "**Shortest**" or "**Time/ distance**" or "**Ecological**".

Choose the restriction criteria: "**Include tollroads**", "**Include ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".

Select "**Confirm**".

Or

Press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

To delete navigation information, press "**Settings**".

Press "**Stop navigation**".

To resume navigation press "**Settings**".

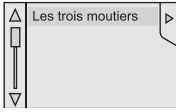
Press "**Resume navigation**".

Towards a recent destination

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".



Select an address from the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a contact

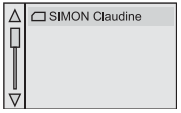
To be able to use navigation "towards a contact in the directory", it is first necessary to enter the address for your contact.

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

Select "**Contacts**".



Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start navigation.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Enter the "**Longitude:**" then the "**Latitude:**".



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a point on the map



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**From map**".

Zooming in on the map shows points with information.

A long press on a point opens its content.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Search for POI**".



Select "**All POIs**"

Or



"**Garage**",

Or



"**Dining/hotels**",

Or



"**Personal**",



Select a category from the list offered.



Select "**Search**".



Select a point of interest from the list offered.



Select "**Navigate to**".

An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.
The detailed procedure is available on: http://citroen.navigation.com.

Hazard zone / Danger zone alert settings



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Alarm!**".

It is then possible to activate Risk Areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk Area alert to be defined.



Select "**Confirm**".

! This series of alerts and displays is only available if Risk Areas have first been downloaded and installed on the system.

Traffic

Traffic information

Display of messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Traffic messages**".

Set the:



"**On the route**",



"**Around**",



"**Near destination**", filters to fine-tune the list of messages.

Press again to remove the filter.



Select the message from the list offered.

Select the magnifying glasses to have vocal information.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

Setting filters

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Info options**".

Select:
- "**Warn of new messages**",
- "**Speak messages**".

Then enter the filter radius.

Select "**Confirm**".

We recommend a filter radius of:
- 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
- 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

Receiving TA messages

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

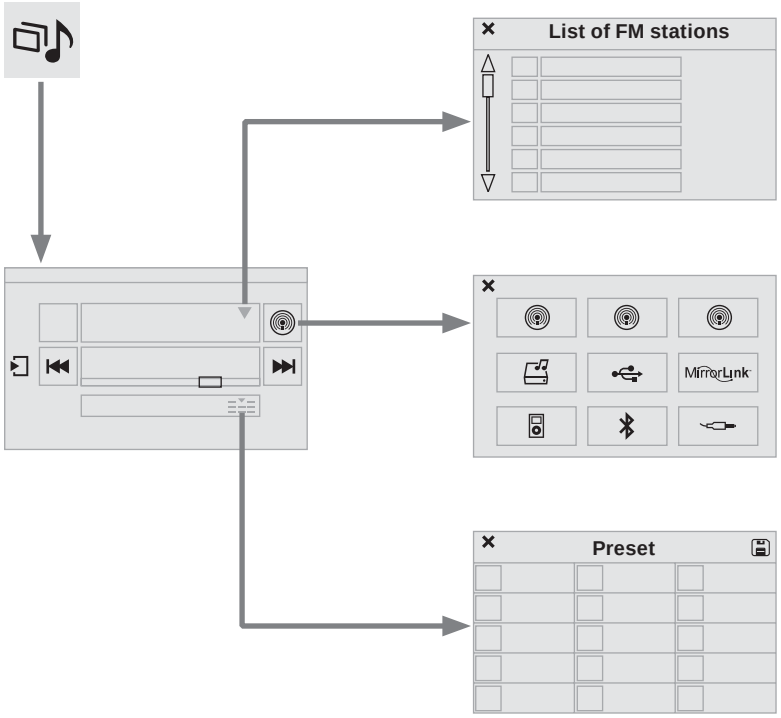
Select "**Voice**".

Off On Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".

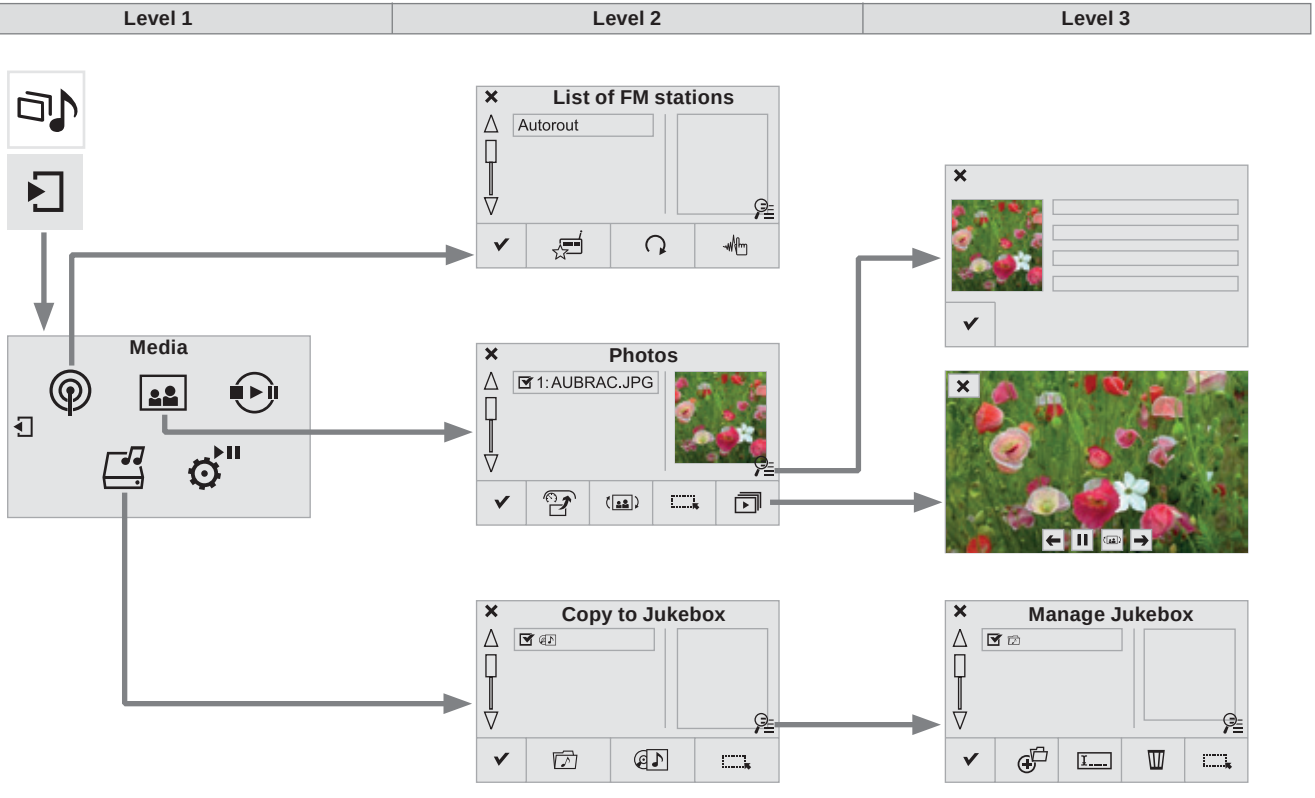
The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

Radio Media

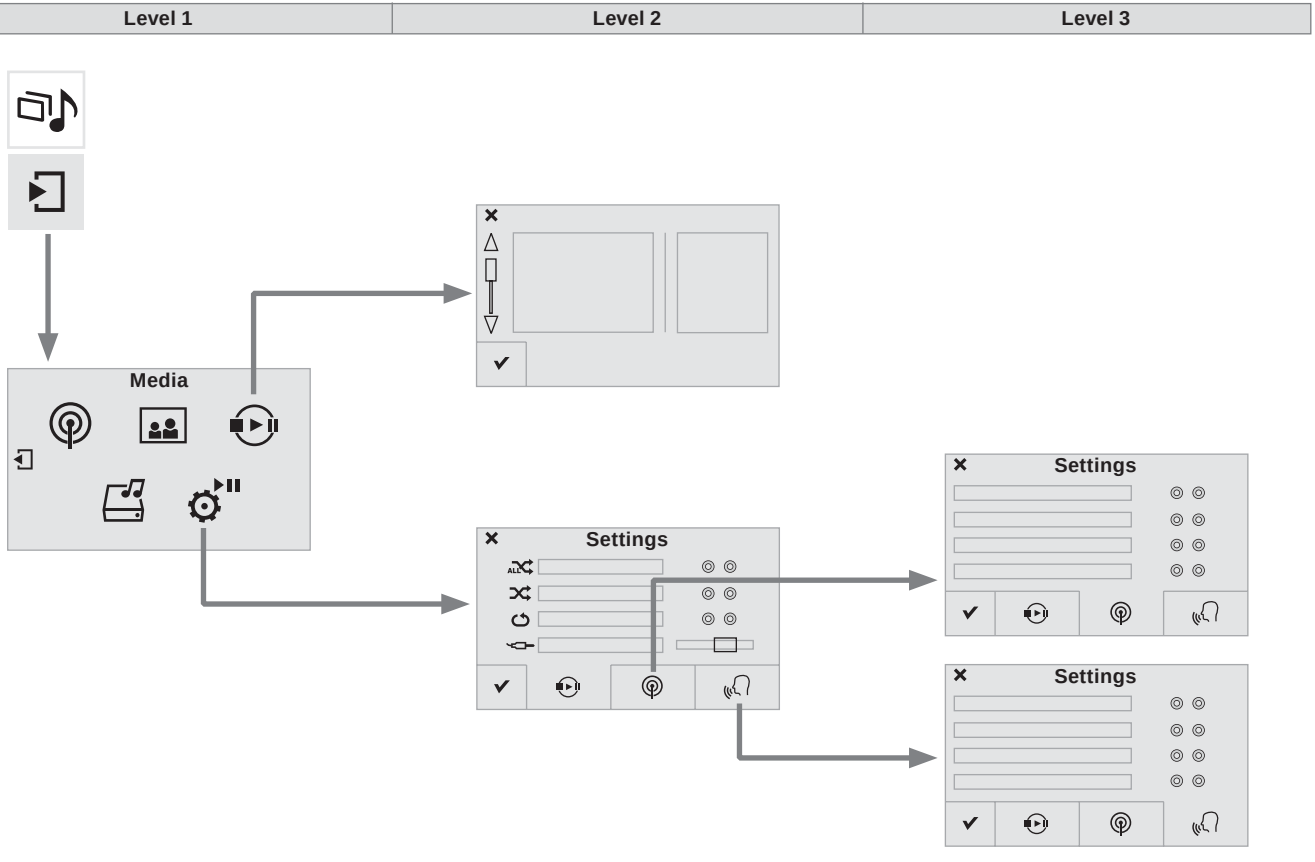
Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	**Radio Media ↓ List**	▼	**List of FM stations**	Press on a radio station to select it.
	**Radio Media ↓ Source**	Radio FM	**FM Radio**	Select change of source.
		Radio DAB	**DAB Radio**	
		Radio AM	**AM Radio**	
			Jukebox	
			USB	
		MirrorLink	**MirrorLink**	
			iPod	
			Bluetooth	
			AUX	
	**Radio Media ↓ Preset**			Press an empty location to Preset it.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Media
List of FM stations
Autorout
Photos
1: AUBRAC.JPG
Copy to Jukebox
Manage Jukebox

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Radio Media → Secondary page → Radio list	Preset		Press a radio station to select it.
	Update list		Update the list of stations received.
	Frequency		Enter the desired radio frequency.
	Confirm		Save the settings.
Radio Media → Secondary page → Photos	Home screen		Display the selected photo in the home page.
	Rotate		Rotate the photo 90°.
	Select all		Select all the photos in the list. Press again to deselect.
	Slideshow	Previous photo.	Display the photos in sequence, full screen. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .bmp, .png.
		Pause / Play.	
		Next photo.	
	Full screen		Display the selected photo full-screen.
Radio Media → Secondary page → Manage Jukebox	Sort by folder		Choose a selection mode.
	Sort by album		
	Select all		
	Copy		Copy files to the Jukebox.
	Magnifying glass	Create folder	Choose the desired function.
		Rename	
		Delete	
		Select all	
		Confirm	Save the settings.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Media
Settings
Settings
Settings

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Radio Media → **Secondary page** → **Media list**					Presentation of the last media used.
	Radio Media → **Secondary page** → **Settings**		**Media** → **Settings**	ALEA	Random (all tracks):	Choose the play settings.
					Random (current album):	
					Loop:	
					Aux. amplification	
			Radio → **Settings**		RDS options	Activate or deactivate the settings.
					DAB/FM options	
					Display Radio Text	
					Digital radio slideshow display	
			Announcements → **Settings**		Traffic announcements (TA)	Activate or deactivate the settings.
					News - Weather	
					Sport - Programm info	
					Flash - Unforeseen events	
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Or

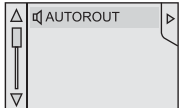
Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**List**" in the primary page.

Or

Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.



Select a radio station from the list offered.

Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.

OR

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Preset**".



Select a preset radio station in the list.

If necessary, select change of source.

FM

Select "**FM Radio**".

Radio FM

Or

"**AM Radio**".

Radio AM

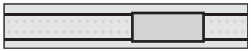
! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing a radio frequency

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



By automatic frequency search



Press ◂ or ▸ to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.

THEN

FM

Select change source.

Radio FM

Select "**FM Radio**".

Or

Radio AM

"**AM Radio**".

OR



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Press on **Frequency**.

THEN



Enter the frequency in full (e.g.: 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then "**Confirm**".

FRANCE BLEU

Changing radio station

Pressing the name of the current radio station brings up a list.

To change radio station press the name of the desired station.

Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).



Press on "**Preset**".

Mémoire 1

Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.

A long press on a number presets (memorises) the station.

Or



A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.

Recall pre-set stations



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**Save**".

Activate/ Deactivate RDS



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



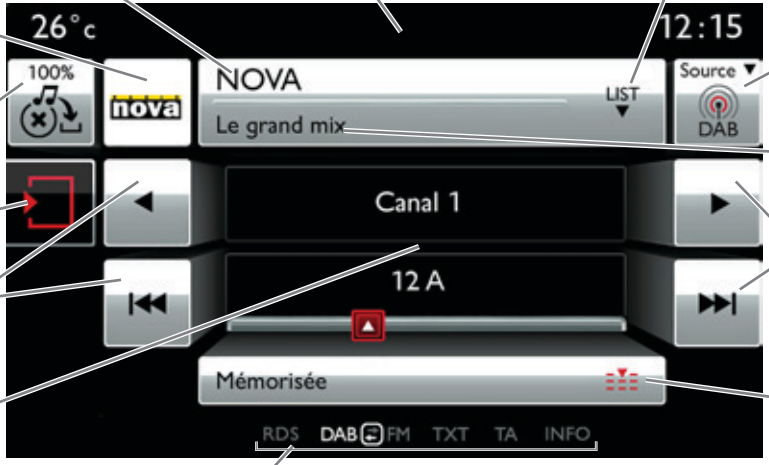
Select "**Radio**".



Activate/deactivate "**RDS options**".

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio



Display of the name of the current station.

Short-cut: access to the choice of audio source and the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).

Select the radio station.

Any thumbnail broadcast by the station.

Manage the Jukebox. Display current action.

Secondary page.

Previous "Multiplex". Previous radio station.

Display the name and number of the multiplex service being used.

Select the audio source. Display the "DAB" band.

Display of "Radiotext" for the current station.

Next "Multiplex". Next radio station.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 15.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

Display of options:
if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,
if active and available, the display will be blank.

If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.

NewsService Journaline®

Journaline® is a text-based information service designed for digital radio systems.
It provides text-based information structured around topics and sub-topics.
This service is available from the "LIST OF DAB STATIONS" page.

Digital radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page.
The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Select "**DAB Radio**".



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

or
Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

Select the radio station from the list offered.

DAB / FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**RADIO**".



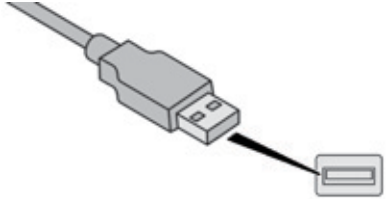
Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then "**Confirm**".

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

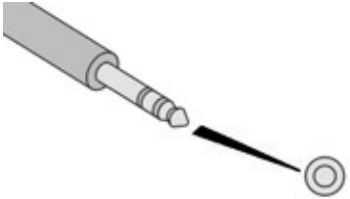
USB player



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

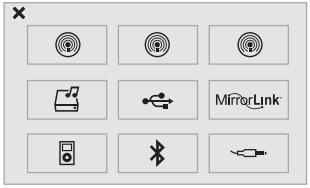
Selection of source



Press on **Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Choose the source.



The steering mounted **SRC** (source) button can be used to go to the next media source, available if the source is active.

Information and advice

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and. mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

! The system supports USB mass storage portable players, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (file allocation table).

! The system does not support the simultaneous connection of two identical devices (two memory sticks or two Apple® players) but it is possible to connect one memory stick and one Apple® player at the same time.

i It is recommended that the USB cable for the portable device is used.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

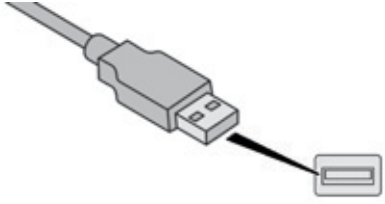
Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section, then "**Bluetooth**".
Choose the "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth peripheral.

Connecting Apple® players



Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Managing the Jukebox

Connect the device (MP3 player...) to the USB port or auxiliary Jack socket using a suitable audio cable.

When no audio file is copied to the system, which has a capacity of 8 GB, all of the Jukebox function symbols are greyed and are not available.



Select "**Media list**".



Select copy "**Copy Jukebox**".



Select "**Sort by folder**".

Or



"**Sort by album**".



Select the magnifying glass to enter the folder or album and select audio file by audio file.



Select "**Confirm**" then "**Copy**".



Select "**New folder**" to create a folder structure in the Jukebox.

Or

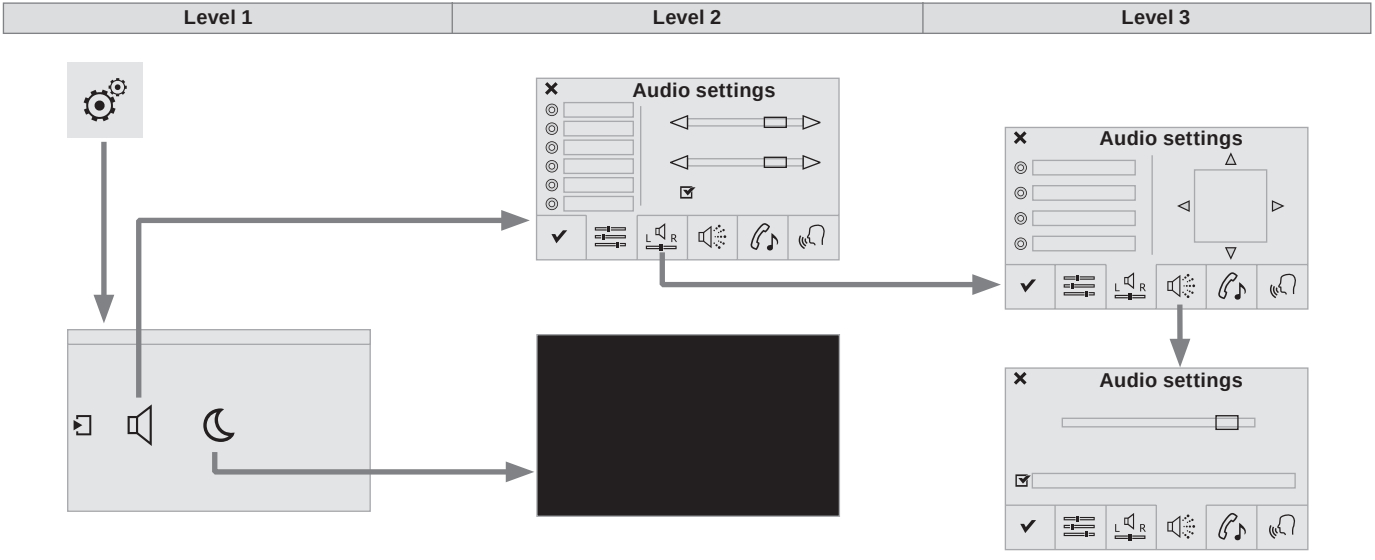


Select "**Keep structure**" to retain the structure from the device.

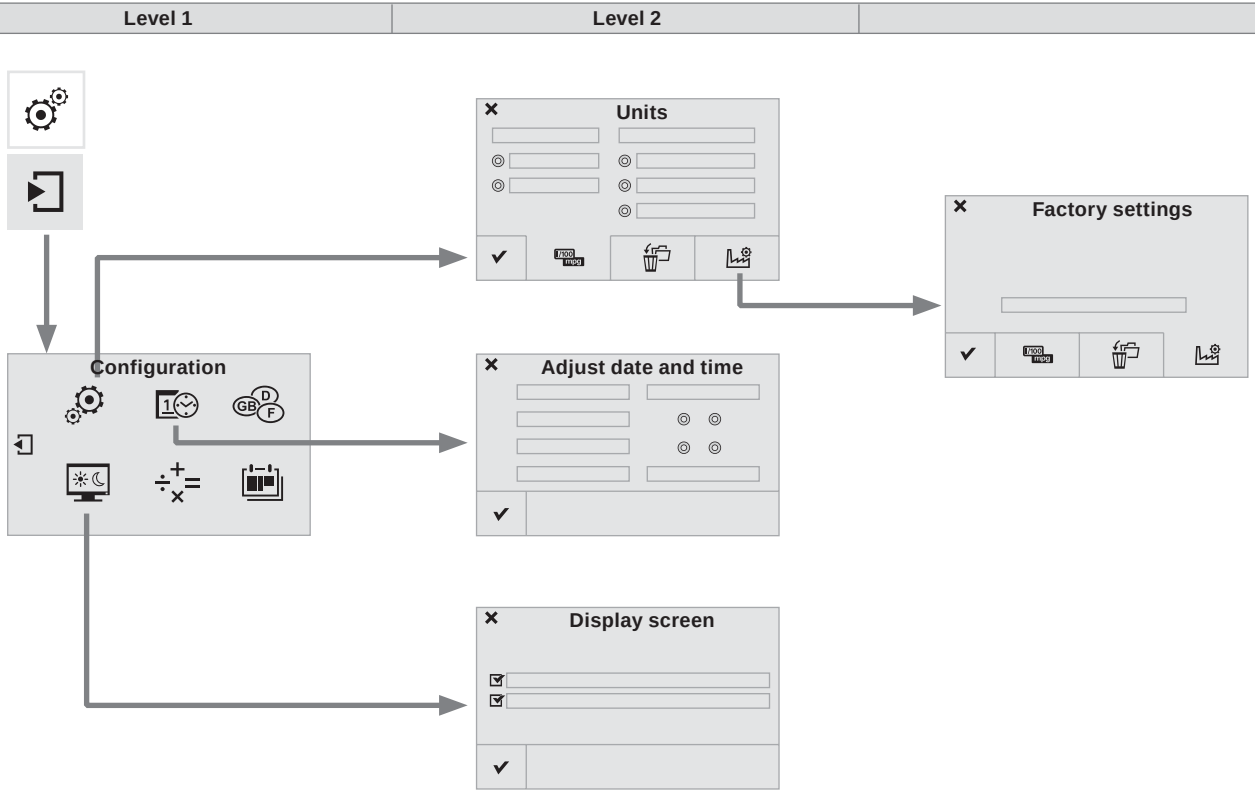


While copying the system returns to the primary page; you can go back to the copy view at any time by selecting this button.

Settings

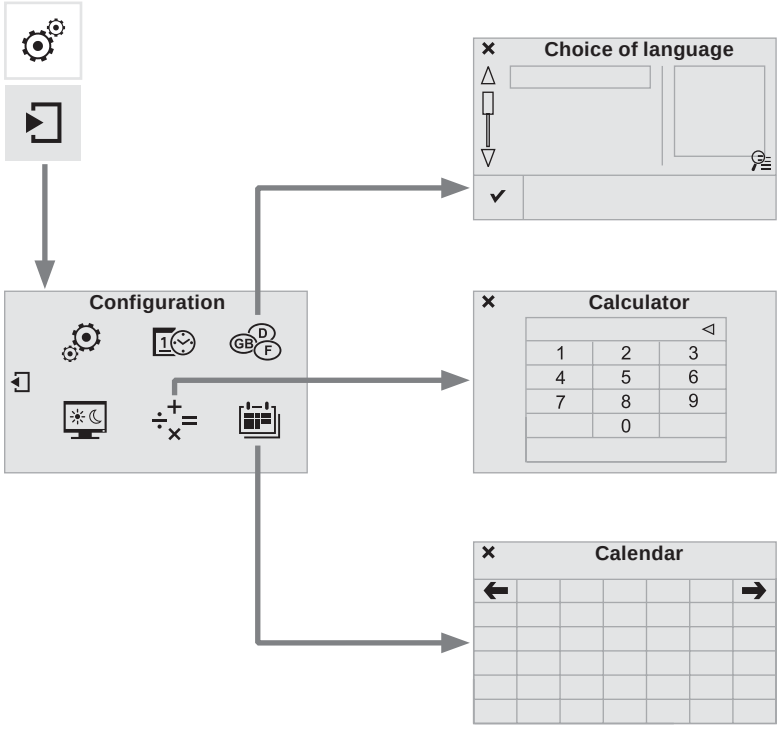

Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Audio settings
Audio settings
Audio settings

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
	Settings → Audio settings		Ambience		Choose the sound ambience.
			Balance		Sound distribution using the Arkamys® system.
			Sound effects		Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.
			Ringtones		Set the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Voice		Set the volume and voice for speaking street names.
		✔	Confirm		Save your settings.
	Settings → Turn off screen				Function that turns off the display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.


Level 1
Level 2
Configuration
Units
Factory settings
Adjust date and time
Display screen

Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings → Secondary page → System Settings		**Units**	Set the units used to display distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
			Delete data	Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.
			Factory settings	Return to factory settings.
		✔	**Confirm**	Save the settings.
	Settings → Secondary page → Time/Date	✔	**Confirm**	Set the date and time then confirm.
	Settings → Secondary page → Screen settings		**Activate automatic text scrolling**	Activate or deactivate the setting then confirm.
			Activate animations	
		✔	**Confirm**	

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings ↓ Secondary page ↓ Languages	✔	Confirm	Select the language then confirm.
	Settings ↓ Secondary page ↓ Calculator			Select the calculator.
	Settings ↓ Secondary page ↓ Calendar			Select the calendar.

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".



Select "**Ambience**"

Or



"**Balance**"

Or



"**Sound effects**"

Or



"**Ringtones**"

Or



"**Voice**".

! The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.

! The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass**, **Treble** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.
The settings for **F-R balance** and **L-R balance** are common to all sources.

! - "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass**"
- "**Treble**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Balance**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**", "**Front only**")
- "**Audible response from touch screen**"
- "**Volume linked to vehicle speed:**" (Activate/Deactivate)

i On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the the passenger compartment.

Modifying system settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**System Settings**".



Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.



Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the list.



Choose the item then select "**Delete**".



Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Screen settings**".



Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**"



Press on "**Settings**" to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page



Select "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, synchronisation with GPS, the time and its format, then the date.



Select "**Languages**" to change language.



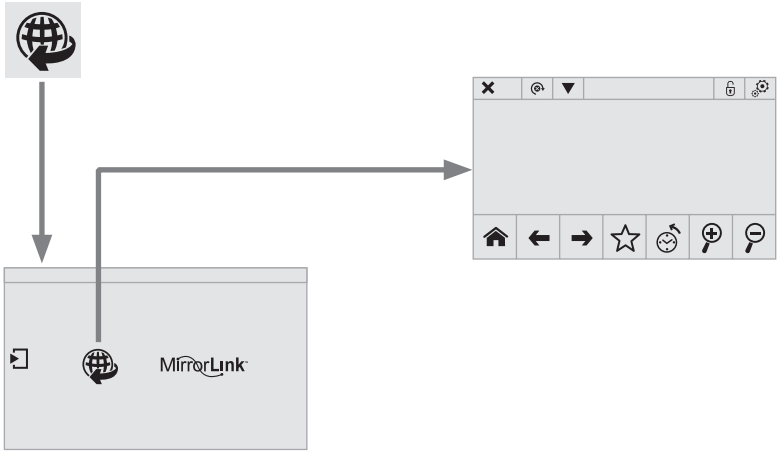
Select "**Calculator**" to display a calculator.



Select "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.

Internet

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Internet browser



Press on **Internet** to display the primary page.

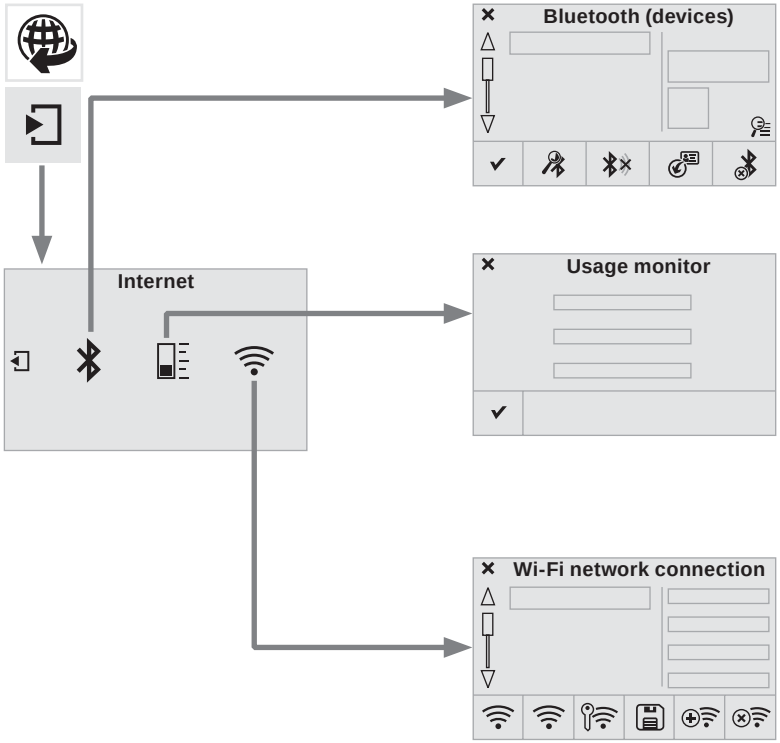


Press on "**Internet browser**" to displays the browser's home page; first connect your smartphone by Bluetooth, option "Internet", see the "**Telephone**" section.

Authentication for Internet browsing via a smartphone is done using the Dial-Up Networking (DUN) standard.

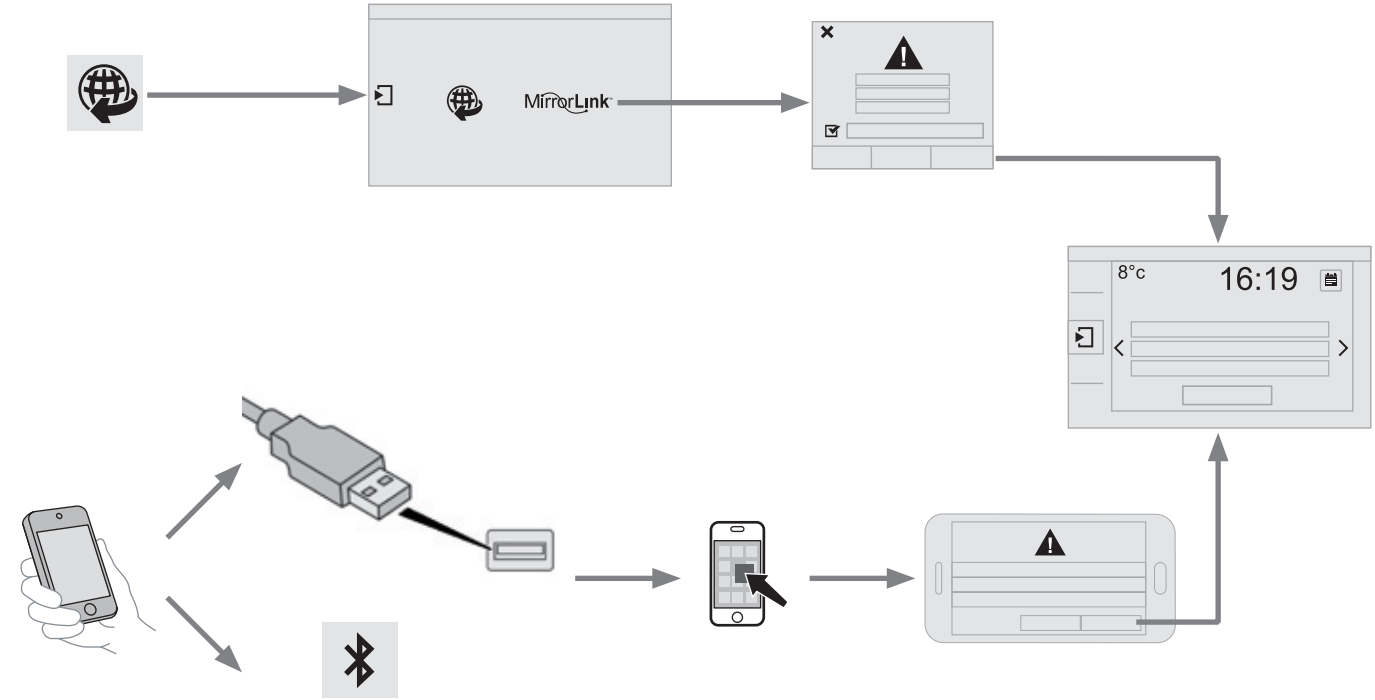
Some smartphones of the latest generation do not support this standard.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
	Internet → Secondary page → Bluetooth Connection		Search		Start the search for a device to connect.
			Connect / Disconnect		Start or end the Bluetooth connection to the selected device.
			Update		Import contacts from the selected telephone to save them in the audio system.
			Delete		Delete the selected telephone.
		✔	Confirm		Save the settings.
	Internet → Secondary page → Transfer rate		Reset		Reset the usage monitor, them confirm.
		✔	Confirm		
	Internet → Secondary page → WiFi connection		All		Display all Wi-Fi networks.
			Secure		Display secure Wi-Fi networks.
			Stored		Memorise the selected Wi-Fi network(s).
			Add		Add a new Wi-Fi network.
			Activate / Deactivate		Activate or deactivate a Wi-Fi network.
			Connect		Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it.

MirrorLink®



MirrorLink® smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving; for information on supported smartphones, go to the CITROËN website for your country.
Select MyCITROËN if present.

Please note:
- if your mobile is supported, to make it "MirrorLink®" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.
- iPhone® is not supported yet; an Apple® application, "CarPlay®", is being developed.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

and



a USB cable is connected. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Internet**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink®**" to start the application in the system.



Start the application on the smartphone.



During the procedure, a page showing the conditions for use is displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

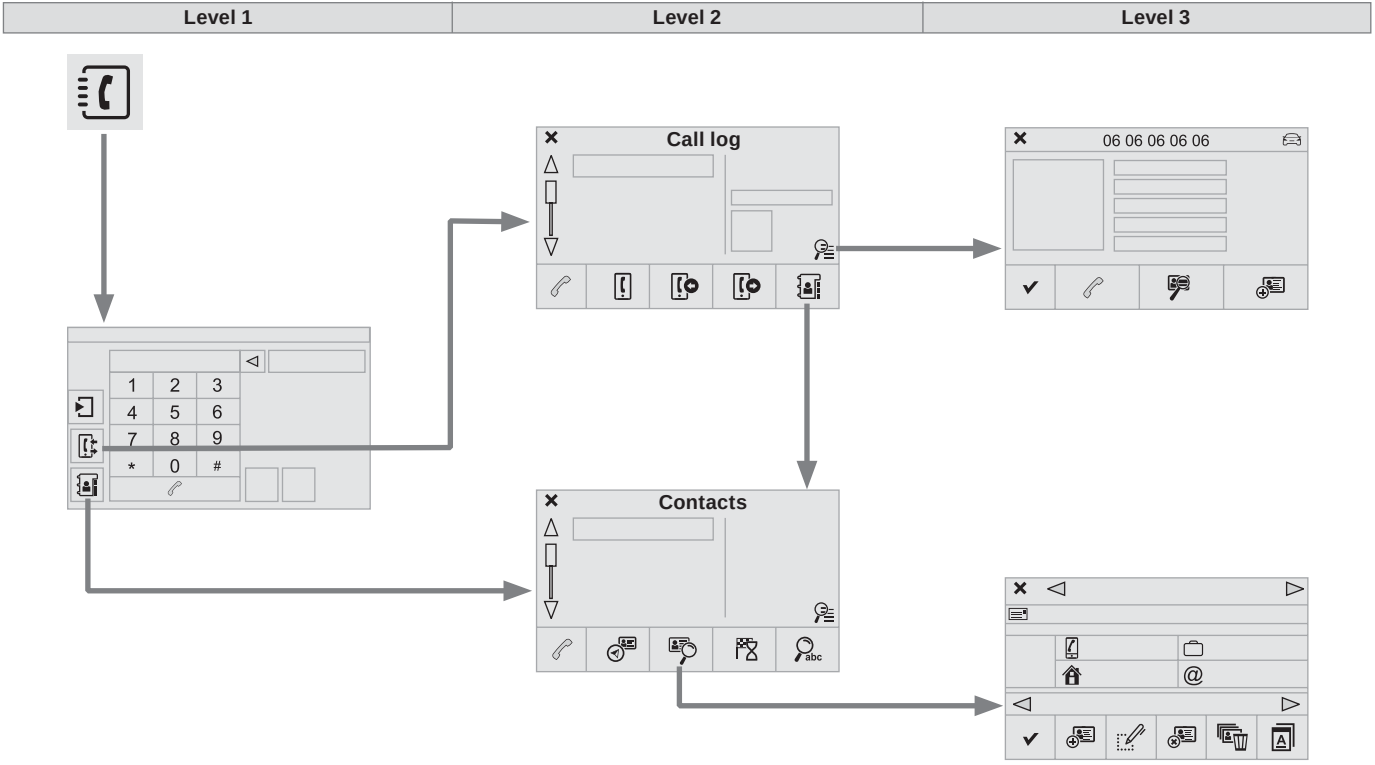
The "**Audio source**" and "**Telephone**" functions remain available in the margin of the **MirrorLink®** display.

Go to the home page to return to the "**MirrorLink®**" display.

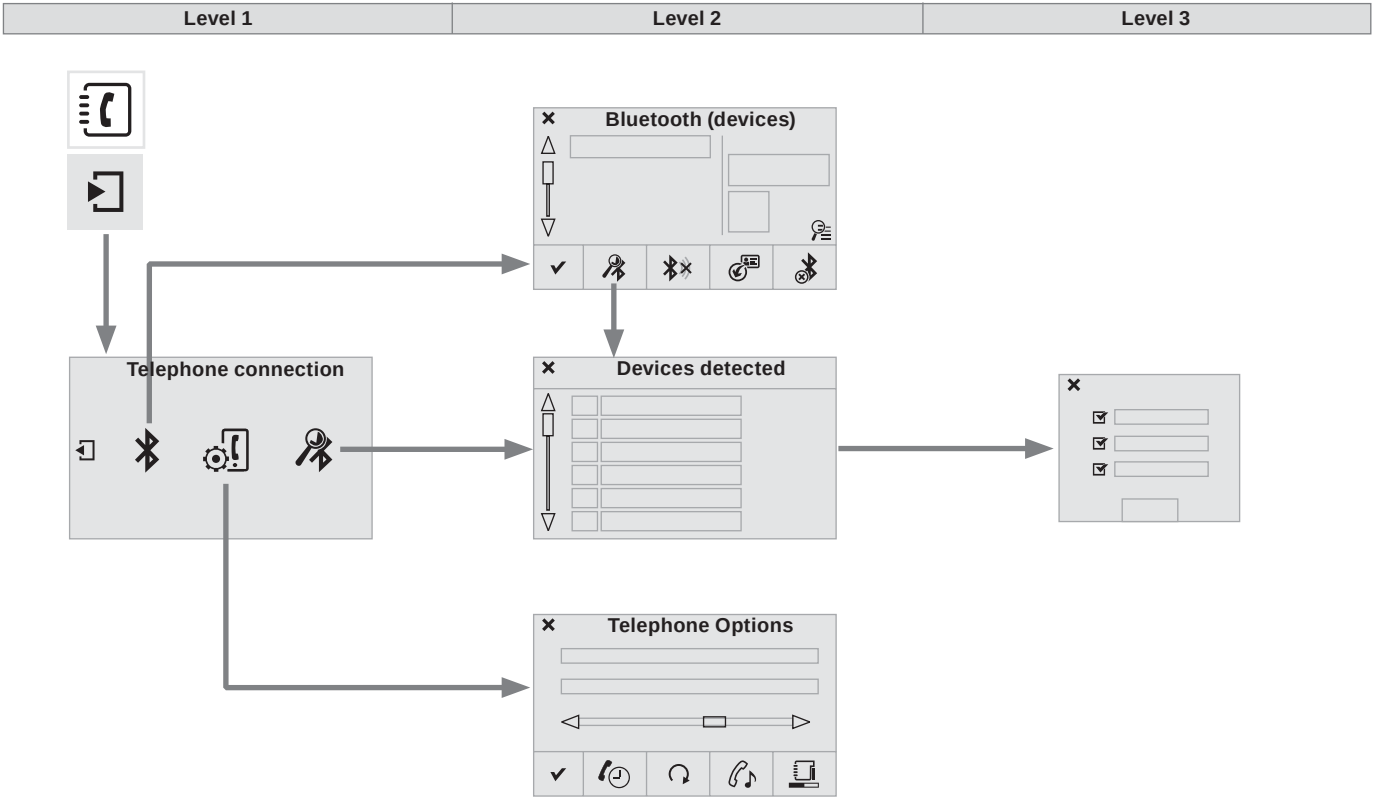
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.
Voice recognition requires a compatible telephone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Telephone


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Call log
06 06 06 06 06
1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9
* 0 #
Contacts
abc

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone → Call log		All calls			After making choices, start the call.
			Incoming calls			
			Outgoing calls			
			Contacts			
			Magnifying glass		View	
					Create	
			Call			
	Telephone → Contacts		Addresses			After making choices, start the call.
			View		New	
					Modify	
					Delete	
					Delete all	
					Search for contact	
				✔	Confirm	
			Navigate to			
			Search for contact			
			Call			


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Bluetooth (devices)
Telephone connection
Devices detected
Telephone Options

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Bluetooth Connection		Search			Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.
			Connect Disconnect			Start or stop the Bluetooth connection to the selected peripheral device.
			Update			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.
			Delete			Delete the selected telephone.
		✔	Confirm			Save the settings.
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Search for devices			☑	Telephone	Start the search for peripheral devices.
			Devices detected	☑	Audio streaming	
				☑	Internet	
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Telephone options		Put on hold			Cut the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.
			Update			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save then in the audio system.
			Ringtones			Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Memory info.			Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth contacts.
		✔	Confirm			Save the settings.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Procedure (short) from the telephone

In the Bluetooth menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.

Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.

Enter this same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.

Procedure from the system

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**".

Select **Search**.
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth function on your telephone off and then on again.



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and "**Confirm**".

Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then "**Confirm**".

Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.

The system offers to connect the telephone:
- in "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- in "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
- in "**Internet**" (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth standard).

Select one or more profiles and confirm.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

! The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The two profiles may both connect by default.

Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).



The recognised telephone appears in the list.

Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.

! Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.



If not, select "**Update**".

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part, with (Bluetooth activated).
To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

Connecting a Bluetooth® peripheral device

Automatic reconnection

On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Manual connection



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripherals.

Select the peripheral to connect.



Press on "**Search**".

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Select the peripheral in the list.



Select "**Search for devices**"

Or



"**Connect / Disconnect**" to start or end the Bluetooth connection with the selected device.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.
Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Managing contacts / entries



Select "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Call log**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

> It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Contacts**".



Select "**Add contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

Or



"**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete all**" to delete all information for the selected contact.



Select "**Directory information**" for the number of entries used, available, ...

Frequently asked questions

The table below gives answers to the most frequently asked questions on your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The navigation settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The Hazard zone audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Traffic info" function in the list of guidance criteria.
I receive a Accident-prone area alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Hazard zone positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for a Hazard zone located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Accident-prone area. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the "Geographic filter" settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has completed starting up, so that there is GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	
The name of the radio station changes.		

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing a sound distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings for (Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re balance, Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, select the "Linear", musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.citroen.co.uk (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Audio system

Audio system / Bluetooth®



Contents

First steps	282
Steering mounted controls	283
Menus	284
Radio	284
Media	286
Telephone	290
Screen menu map(s)	292
Frequently asked questions	296

Your Audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio equipment may switch off after a few minutes.

First steps



On / Off, volume setting.

SOURCE Select source:
Radio; USB; AUX; CD; Streaming.

Audio settings:
Front/rear fader, left/right balance, bass/treble, loudness, audio ambiences.

LIST **REFRESH** Display the list of local stations.
Long press: CD tracks or MP3 folders (CD / USB).

MODE Select the screen display mode:
Date, audio functions, trip computer, telephone.

DARK The DARK button changes the screen display for improved driving comfort at night.
1st press: upper bar only illuminated.
2nd press: black screen.
3rd press: return to standard display.

Abandon the current operation.

MENU Display main menu.

1 Buttons 1 to 6
Select a pre-set radio station.
Long press: pre-set a station.

◀◀ ▶▶ Automatic frequency search down/up.
Select previous/next CD, MP3 or USB track.

▲ ▼ Select next frequency down/up.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Select previous/next folder / genre / artist / playlist (USB).

OK Confirm.

TA / PTY TA (Traffic Announcements) on/off.
Long press: PTY* (radio Programme TYpe).

▲ Eject CD.

BAND **AST** Selection of AM / FM wavebands.

* Available according to version.

Steering mounted controls





Radio: select the previous/next pre-set station.
USB: select genre / artist / folder from the classification list.
Select the previous/next item in a menu.



Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.
CD / MP3 / USB: selection of the next track.
CD / USB: continuous press: fast forward.
Move in the list.



Change audio source.
Confirm a selection.
Call/end call on the telephone.
Press for more than 2 seconds: telephone main menu.



Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.
CD / MP3 / USB: selection of the previous track.
CD / USB: continuous press: fast back.
Move in the list.



Volume increase.



Volume decrease.



Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
The sound is restored by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Menus

Screen C



Audio functions
Radio; CD; USB; AUX.

Trip computer
Enter distances; Alerts: Status of functions.

Bluetooth®: Telephone - Audio
Pairing; Hands-free kit; Streaming.

Personalisation-configuration
Vehicle parameters; Display; Languages.

Screen A



For an overview of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

Radio

Selecting a station

SOURCE

Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select the radio.

BAND AST

Press the **BAND AST** button to select a waveband.

Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

LIST REFRESH

Press the **LIST REFRESH** button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum).
To update this list, press for more than two seconds.

RDS

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

MENU

Press the **MENU** button.



Select "**Audio functions**".

OK

Press **OK**.



Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

OK

Press **OK**.



Select "**Activate RDS**".

OK

Press **OK**, RDS is displayed in the screen.

In "**Radio**" mode, press **OK** directly to activate / deactivate RDS mode.

RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

TA / PTY

Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

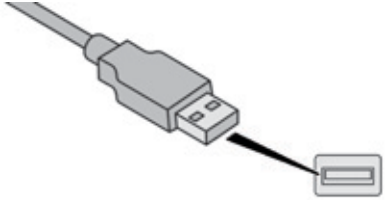
Media

USB player



This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket, depending on model.

! The system creates playlists (temporary memory), which can take from a few seconds to several minutes on the first connection.
Reducing the number of non-music files and the number of folders reduces this waiting time. Playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected.
The lists are memorised: if the lists are not changed, the subsequent loading time is reduced.



Insert a USB memory stick into the USB port or connect a USB peripheral device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

LIST REFRESH Press and hold **REFRESH LIST** to display the different classifications.

Select by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**".

OK Press **OK** to select the classification required, then press **OK** again to confirm.

LIST REFRESH Press **REFRESH LIST** briefly to display the previously selected classification.

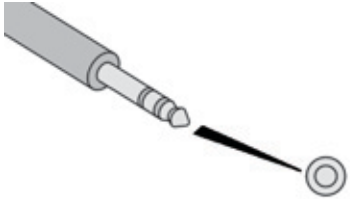
Navigate through the list using the left/right and up/down buttons.

OK Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.

Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next track in the list.
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or back.

Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**" in the list.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



Connect the portable device (MP3 player, …) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

SOURCE

Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **AUX**.

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Operation of controls is via the portable device.

! Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the vehicle's player.
Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

SOURCE

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.

◀◀ ▶▶

Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST REFRESH

Press the **LIST REFRESH** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

◀◀ ▶▶

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or fast back.

Playing an MP3 CD compilation

Insert an MP3 CD compilation in the player.
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

! On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.
While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed.
All of the files are displayed on a single level.



To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.



Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the **LIST REFRESH** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.

Information and advice

The audio system will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording, the ISO 9660 level 1. 2 or Joliet file format is recommended.
If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the audio system.

Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section.

Select in the "**Bluetooth: Telephone - Audio**" menu the telephone to be connected.
The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.

SOURCE

Activate the streaming source by pressing the **SOURCE** button*.

Control of tracks to be played is via the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls**. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen.

* In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.
** If the telephone supports the function.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

Screen C
(Available according to model and version)

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio equipment must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

Go to www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

◀◀ ▶▶ In the menu, select:
- "**Bluetooth: Telephone - Audio**"
- "**Bluetooth configuration**"
- "**Perform a Bluetooth search**"

A window is displayed with a message that a search is in progress.

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth device used.
Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

The first 4 telephones recognised are displayed in this window.

The "**Telephone**" menu permits access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**"*, "**Calls list**", "**Consult the paired equipment**".

Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.



A virtual keypad is displayed in the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits.

OK Confirm by pressing **OK**.

A message in the screen indicates the telephone chosen. To accept the pairing, enter the same code on the telephone, then confirm with **OK**.
If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not limited.

A message that the pairing has been successful appears in the screen.

The automatic connection authorised is only active after the telephone has been configured. The directory and the call list can be accessed after the necessary synchronisation period.

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Select the **YES** tab on the display using the buttons.

Confirm by pressing **OK**.

Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

From the **Bluetooth: Telephone - Audio**" menu.

Select "**Manage the telephone call**".

Select "**Call**".

Or

Select "**Calls list**".

Or

Select "**Directory**".

Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Or

To dial a number, use your telephone's keypad, with the vehicle stationary.

Ending a call

During a call, press this button for more than 2 seconds.

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.
Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Screen menu map(s)

Screen A

- **Radio-CD**
  - **RDS options**
  - **REG mode**
  - **CD repeat**
  - **Shuffle play**
- **Vehicle config***
  - **R wiper in rev**
  - **Guide lighting**
- **Options**
  - **Diagnostic**
    - View
    - Abandon
- **Units**
  - **Temperature: °Celsius / °Fahrenheit**
  - **Fuel consumption: KM/L - L/100 - MPG**
- **Display adjust**
  - **Year**
  - **Month**
  - **Day**
  - **Hour**
  - **Minutes**
  - **12 H/24 H mode**
- **Language**
  - **Français**
  - **Italiano**
  - **Nederlands**
  - **Portuguès**
  - **Português do Brasil**
  - **Deutsch**
  - **English**
  - **Español**
  - **Čeština**
  - **Hrvatski**
  - **Magyar**

* The settings vary according to the trim level of the vehicle.

Screen C

OK Press the **OK** dial for access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

Radio

1 **activate / deactivate RDS**

1 **activate / deactivate REG mode**

1 **activate / deactivate radiotext**

CD / MP3 CD

1 **activate / deactivate Intro**

1 **activate / deactivate track repeat** (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

1 **activate / deactivate random play** (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

USB

1 **activate / deactivate track repeat** (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

1 **activate / deactivate random play** (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

Screen C

MENU

Pressing the **MENU** button displays:

Audio functions

Audio functions

1 **Audio functions**

2 **FM preferences**

3 Alternative frequencies (RDS)

4 Activate / deactivate

3 Regional mode (REG)

4 Activate / deactivate

3 Radio-text information (RDTXT)

4 Activate / deactivate

2 **Play modes**

3 Album repeat (RPT)

4 Activate / deactivate

3 Track random play (RDM)

4 Activate / deactivate

Trip computer

Enter distance to destination

1 **Enter distance to destination**

2 **Distance: x miles**

Warning log

1 **Warning log**

2 **Vehicle diagnosis**

State of systems

1 **State of systems**

2 **Systems activated or deactivated**

Personalisation-configuration

- 1 **Define the vehicle parameters***
- 1 **Display configuration**
  - 2 **Brightness-video adjustment**
    - 3 Normal video
    - 3 Inverse video
    - 3 Brightness (- +) adjustment
  - 2 **Date and time adjustment**
    - 3 Setting the day/month/year
    - 3 Setting the hour/minute
    - 3 Choice of 12 h / 24 h mode
  - 2 **Choice of units**
    - 3 l/100 km - mpg - km/l
    - 3 °Celsius / °Fahrenheit
- 1 **Choice of language**

Bluetooth: Telephone - Audio

- 1 **Bluetooth configuration**
  - 2 **Connect/Disconnect an equipment**
  - 2 **Telephone function**
  - 2 **Audio Streaming function**
    - 3 Consult the paired equipment
    - 3 Delete a paired equipment
    - 3 Perform a Bluetooth search
- 1 **Call**
  - 2 **Calls list**
    - 3 Directory
- 1 **Manage the telephone call**
  - 2 **Terminate the current call**
  - 2 **Activate secret mode**

* The settings vary according to vehicle.

Frequently asked questions

The table below gives answers to the most frequently asked questions on your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or CD play stopping.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, underground car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

Media

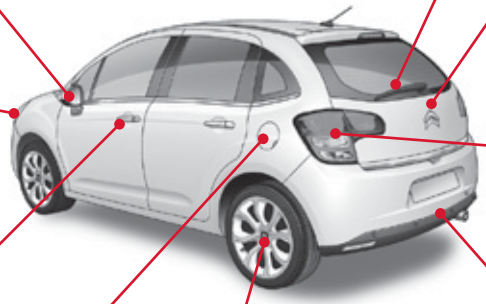
QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The message "USB peripheral error" is displayed on the screen. The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.
	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	

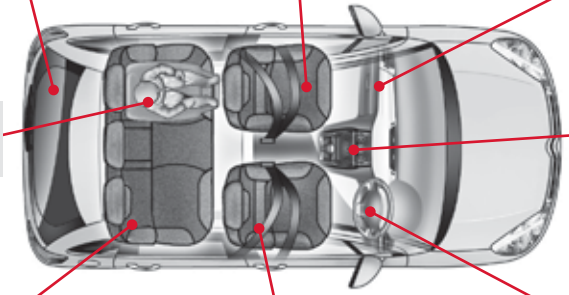
Exterior





Remote control key - locking/unlocking - battery - anti-theft protection - starting	63-65, 121-123
Door mirrors	57
Lighting controls Headlamp adjustment Changing bulbs - front lamps - foglamps - direction indicator repeaters	75-79 79 181-184
Doors - opening/closing - central locking - emergency control Alarm Electric child lock Electric windows	71-73 67-68 105 69-70
Fuel tank Misfuel prevention	155-156 157
Accessories	61-62
Hill start assist Braking assistance Trajectory control Tyre pressures	138 112 113 216
Wiper controls Changing a wiper blade	80-82 195
Boot Temporary puncture repair kit Changing a wheel - tools - removing/refitting AdBlue additive, topping-up	74 144-148 174-180 159-165, 166-168
Changing bulbs - rear lamps - 3rd brake lamp - number plate lamps	185-186
Rear parking sensors Reversing camera Towbar Towing	143-144 145 203-204 201-202

Interior



Front seats 54-55

Boot fittings 90-91
- rear parcel shelf
- hooks
- stowing rings

Interior fittings 85-89
- Zenith windscreen
- auxiliary sockets
- centre armrest
- mat

Glove box 87

Deactivating the passenger's airbag 95, 117

ISOFIX mountings 101-103, 104

Rear seats 56

Audio pre-equipment 59-60

Child seats 92-100, 104

Airbags 116-119

Seat belts 114-115

Instruments and controls

Rear view mirror 58
Zenith windscreen blind 86
Sun visor 87

Instrument panels 10-11
Warning lamps 12-23
Gauges and indicators 24-27
Adjustment buttons 28-29
- trip distance recorder /clock
- lighting dimmer / black panel

Lighting controls 75-79
Headlamp adjustment 79

Scented air freshener 53

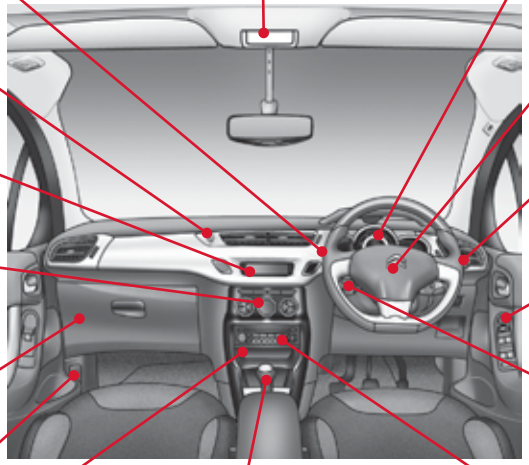
Multifunction screens 34-39
Touch screen tablet 40-44
Hazard warning lamps 106

Ventilation / Heating 45-49
Manual air conditioning 47-48
Digital air conditioning 50-51
Rear screen demist/ defrost 52

Dashboard fuses 188-190

Opening the bonnet 147

Interior mood lighting 84



Steering wheel adjustment 58
Horn 107

Wiper controls 80-82
Trip computer 30-33
Stop & Start 135-137

Door mirrors 57
Electric windows 69-70

Speed limiter 139-140
Cruise control 141-142

Audio system 281-299
Setting the date/time 35, 39
Touch screen tablet 219-280
Setting the date/time 44
Emergency or assistance call 107, 217-218

Manual gearbox 124
Electronic gearbox(ETG) 125-129
Automatic gearbox 130-133
Gear efficiency indicator 134
Parking brake 124

Technical data - Maintenance

Petrol engines 205-208
LPG engines 209-210
Diesel engines 211-214
Dimensions 215
Identification markings 216

Running out of Diesel 158

Checking levels 150-152
- oil
- brake fluid
- coolant
- screenwash fluid
- additive (Diesel with particle filter)

AdBlue additive 159-168

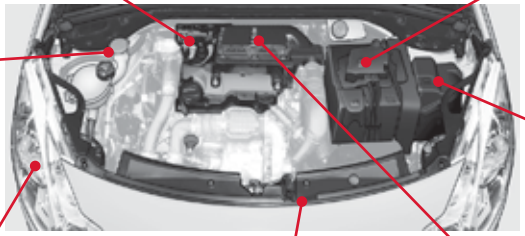
Changing bulbs 181-187
- front
- rear
- interior

Battery 196-198
Energy economy mode 199

Engine compartment fuses 188, 191-194

Checking components 153-154
- battery
- air filter / passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- particle filter (Diesel)
- brake pads/discs

Bonnet 147
Under-bonnet layout, petrol 148
Under-bonnet layout, Diesel 149



A

ABS and EBFD systems 112
Accessories 61
Accessory socket, 12V 88
Additif AdBlue 22
Additive, AdBlue 159, 165
Adjusting headlamps 79
Adjusting head restraints 55
Adjusting the steering wheel 58
Advice on driving 120
Airbags 20, 116
Airbags, curtain 118, 119
Airbags, front 116, 119
Airbags, lateral 118, 119
Air conditioning 8, 46
Air conditioning, digital 46, 50
Air conditioning, manual 46, 47
Air filter 153
Air flow 47, 51
Air intake 48, 51
Air recirculation 48, 51
Air vents 45
Alarm 67
Ambient temperature (display) 10
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 112
Anti-pinch 69
Anti-theft 121
Apple® player 250, 289
Armrest, front 87
Assistance call 107, 217
Audible warning 107
Audio cable 248, 286, 287
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 248, 250, 289
Audio system 281
Automatic illumination of headlamps 75, 78
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps 106
Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers 80, 82
Auxiliary socket 88, 248, 287

B

Battery 153, 196
Battery, charging 196
Battery, remote control 65, 66
Black panel 29
Blind 86
BlueHDi 24, 159
Bluetooth connection 271, 289
Bluetooth (telephone) 266, 290
Bonnet 147
Boot 74
Boot lamp 84, 187
Brake discs 154
Brake lamps 185
Brake pads 154
Braking assistance system 112

C

Capacity, fuel tank 155
CD 287
CD MP3 288
Central locking 63, 72
Changing a bulb 180-186
Changing a fuse 187-193
Changing a wheel 174-177
Changing a wiper blade 82, 195
Changing the date 35, 39, 44
Changing the remote control battery 65
Changing the time 28, 35, 39, 44
Checking levels 150-152
Checking the engine oil level 27, 150
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 173
Checks 148-154
Child lock 105
Children 92-105, 117
Child seats 92-94, 98, 99, 103, 104
Child seats, conventional 98
Child seats, ISOFIX 102-103
CITROËN Connect Box 217
CITROËN Localised Emergency Call 217
Clock 28, 35, 39, 44
Closing the boot 63, 74
Closing the doors 63, 71
Connectors, audio 88, 248, 287
Coolant level 152
Cruise control 141
Cup holder 85

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) 246, 247
Date (setting) 35, 39, 44
Daytime running lamps 79
Deactivating the passenger airbag 117
Deactivating the rear windows 70
Deadlocking 64

Demisting, defrosting, front 49
Demisting, defrosting, rear 52
Dials and gauges 10, 11
Diesel additive level 152
Diesel engine pre-heat warning lamp 13
Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) 246, 247
Dimensions 215
Dipped beam 75, 182
Dipstick 27, 150
Direction indicators 106, 181, 185
Doors 71
Doors emergency control 73
Door pockets 85
Driving economically 8
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 16, 18, 113

E

EBA (Emergency braking assistance) 112
Eco-driving 8
Economy mode 199
Electric window controls 69
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 112
Electronic engine immobiliser 66, 121
Emergency boot release 74
Emergency braking system 112
Emergency call 107, 217
Emergency warning lamps 106
Emissions control system, SCR 23, 158
Energy economy mode 199
Engine compartment 148, 149
Engine compartment fusebox 190
Engine, Diesel 13, 149, 156, 211
Engine oil 150
Engine oil level indicator 27, 150
Engine, petrol 148, 156, 205
Engines 205, 209, 211
Environment 8, 66, 109, 133, 152, 168, 197
Equipment settings 34, 37, 42, 252, 292

F

Filling with fuel 155-157
Fitting a wheel 179
Fittings, boot 90
Fitting speakers 59
Flashing indicators 106
Foglamps, front 76, 184
Foglamps, rear 76, 185
Fragrance cartridge 53
Frequency (radio) 244, 245
Front seats 54
Fuel 8, 156
Fuel consumption 8
Fuel filler flap 155, 157
Fuel gauge 10, 11, 155
Fuel tank 155, 157
Fusebox, dashboard 189
Fuses 188

G

Gearbox, automatic 8, 130, 154, 198
Gearbox, electronic 8, 125, 135, 154, 198
Gearbox, manual 8, 124, 134, 135, 154
Gear efficiency indicator 134
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 130
Gear lever, electronic gearbox 125, 154
Gear lever, manual gearbox 124
Glove box 87

H

Hands-free kit 266, 290
Hazard warning lamps 106
Head restraints, front 55
Head restraints, rear 56
Heating 47, 50
Height and reach adjustment, steering wheel 58
Hill start assist 138
Hooks 91
Horn 107

I

Indicators, direction 106
Inflating accessories (using the kit) 172
Inflating tyres 8, 214
Installing speakers 59
Instrument panel lighting 29
Instrument panels 10, 11
Instrument panel screen 10, 11, 134

Interior fittings 85-89
Interior lamp 83, 187
Interior mood lighting 84
Internet 260, 261
Internet browser 260, 261
ISOFIX 102
ISOFIX mountings 101, 103

J

Jack 174
Jack cable 248, 287
JACK socket 88, 248, 287
Jukebox 251

K

Keeping children safe 92-105, 117
Key in ignition warning 122
Key with remote control 63-66, 121

L

Labels, identification 216
Lamps, front 181
Lamps, rear 185
Lamps, warning and indicator 12-23
LED daytime running lamps 79
Level, AdBlue® additive 159
Level, brake fluid 151
Levels and checks 148-152
Lighting bulbs (replacement) 180-186
Lighting control stalk 75
Lighting dimmer 29
Lighting, guide-me home 77, 78
Lighting, interior 83, 84, 187
Loading 8
Load reduction mode 199
Localised Assistance Call 217
Locating your vehicle 65
Locking from the inside 72
Low fuel level 155
LPG 209

M

Main beam 75, 183
Maintenance 8, 149-152
Markings, identification 216
Mat 89
Menu 224, 226, 230, 238, 240, 242, 252, 254, 256, 266, 268
Menu, main 284
Menus (audio) 238, 240, 242
Menus (Touch screen tablet) 219, 223
Mirrorlink connection 265
Mirror, rear view 58
Mirrors, door 57
Misfuel prevention 157
Mountings for ISOFIX seats 101, 103
MP3 CD 288

N

Navigation 224-237
Number plate lamps 185

O

Oil change 150
Oil consumption 150
Oil filter 153
Oil level 27, 150
Opening the bonnet 147
Opening the boot 63, 74
Opening the doors 63, 71
Opening the fuel filler flap 155
Operation indicator lamps 12-23

P

Paint colour code 216
Parcel shelf, rear 91
Parking brake 124, 154
Parking sensors, rear 143
Particle filter 152, 153
Passenger compartment filter 153
Player, CD MP3 ..... 287, 288
Port, USB 88, 248, 286
Preheater, Diesel 13
Priming the fuel system 158
Protecting children 92-105, 117
Puncture 169

R

Radio 238, 284
Radio pre-equipment 59
RDS 245, 285
Rear foglamp 185
Rear screen (demisting) 52
Recharging the battery 197
Reduction of electrical load 199
Regeneration of the particle filter 153
Reinitialising the electric windows 70
Reinitialising the remote control 65
Remote control 63-66
Removing a wheel 177
Removing the mat 89
Replacing bulbs 181-187
Replacing fuses 188-194
Replacing the air filter 153
Replacing the oil filter 153
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 153
Replacing wiper blades 82, 195
Resetting the service indicator 26
Resetting the trip recorder 28
Rev counter 10, 11
Reversing camera 145
Reversing lamp 185
Risk areas (update) 235
Routine checks 153, 154
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 158

S

Safety for children 92-105, 117
Scented air freshener 53
Screen menu 224, 226, 230, 238, 240, 242, 252, 254, 256, 266, 268
Screen menu map 224, 226, 230, 238, 240, 242, 252, 254, 256, 266, 268, 292, 293
Screen, monochrome 34, 37, 284, 292, 293
Screenwash 81
Screenwash reservoir 152
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 159
Seat adjustment 54
Seat belts 98, 114, 115
Seats, rear 56
Serial number, vehicle 216
Service indicator 24
Service warning lamp 17
Servicing 8
Settings (Menus) 34, 37, 42, 256, 290
Setting the clock 28, 35, 39, 44
Sidelamps 75, 183, 185
Side repeater 183
Snow chains 200
Spare wheel 174
Speakers (fitting) 59
Speed limiter 139
Speedometer 10, 11
Starting the engine 121
Steering mounted controls, audio 222, 283
Stop Start 33, 52, 135, 147, 153, 155, 196
Storage 85, 87
Storage box 91
Storage drawer 89
Stowing rings 90
Sun visor 87
Switching off the engine 121
Synchronising the remote control 65
System settings 259

T

Table of weights 206, 209, 212
Tables of engines 205, 209, 211
Tables of fuses 188
Tank, AdBlue® additive 159, 166
Tank, fuel 155, 157
Technical data 205-216
Telephone 266, 290
Temperature adjustment 47, 50
Temporary tyre repair kit 169
Third brake lamp 186
Three flashes function (direction indicators) 106
Time 10
TMC (Traffic info) 236
Tools 174
Total distance recorder 28
Touch screen tablet 40
Touch screen tablet (Menus) 40, 42, 219, 223
Towbar 203
Towed loads 206, 209, 212
Towing another vehicle 202
Traction control (ASR) 16, 18, 113
Traffic information (TA) 237, 285
Traffic information (TMC) 236
Trailer 203
Trajectory control systems 113
Trip computer 30-33, 38

Trip distance recorder 28
Tyre pressures 173, 216
Tyre under-inflation detection 21, 108, 173

U

Under-inflation (detection) 21, 108, 173
Unlocking 63
Unlocking from the inside 72
Update risk areas 235
Updating the date 35, 39, 44
Updating the time 35, 39, 44
UREA 159, 160
USB player 88, 248, 286

V

Vanity mirror 87
Vehicle configuration 34, 37, 42, 257, 290, 293
Ventilation 45-47, 51

W

Warning lamps 12-23
Warning lamp, SCR emissions control system 23
Wash-wipe, rear 81
Weights 206, 209, 212
Wi-Fi network connection 262
Window controls 69
Wiper control stalk 80-82
Wiper, rear 81
Wipers 80, 82

Z

Zenith windscreen 86



Labels are fitted in various areas of your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by CITROËN may cause faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the new vehicle warranty.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, competence and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Printed in the EU
Anglais

12-14

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France
Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z

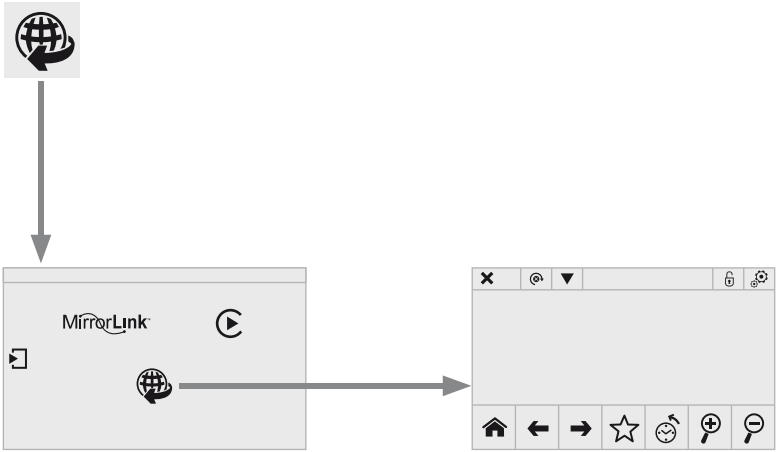
FIA World Touring Car Championship
WRC FIA WORLD RALLY CHAMPIONSHIP
9 WORLD RALLY CHAMPION DRIVER TITLES SEBASTIEN LOEB DRIVER CLASSIFICATION
8 WORLD RALLY CHAMPION MANUFACTURER TITLES CITROËN MANUFACTURER CLASSIFICATION

15.C3.0030
Anglais

2015 – DOCUMENTATION DE BORD
4Dconcept
Diadeis
Interak

Connected services

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Internet browser



Press on **Connected services** to display the primary page.

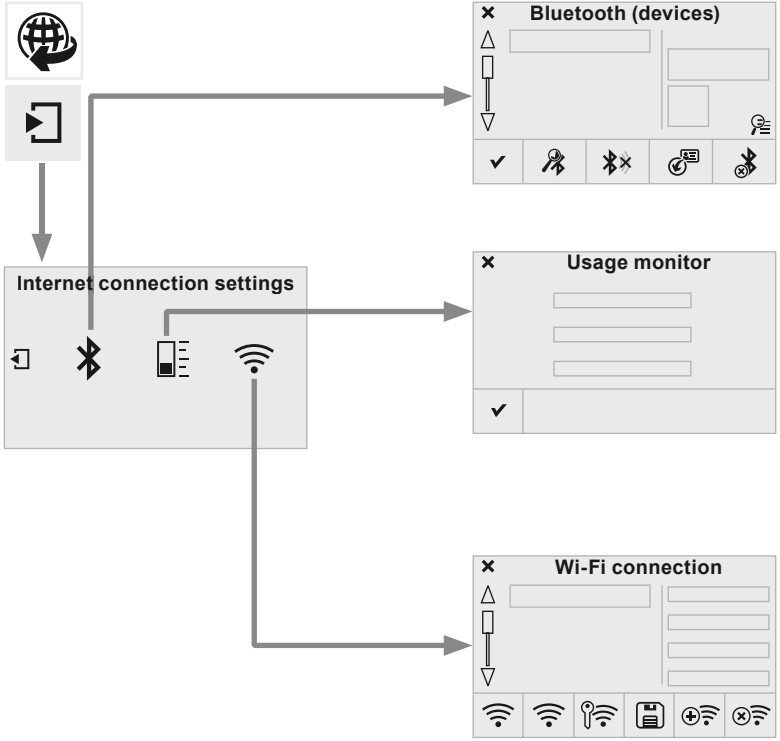


Press on "**Internet browser**" to displays the browser's home page; first connect your smartphone by Bluetooth, option "Internet", see the "**Telephone**" section.

Authentication for Internet browsing via a smartphone is done using the Dial-Up Networking (DUN) standard.

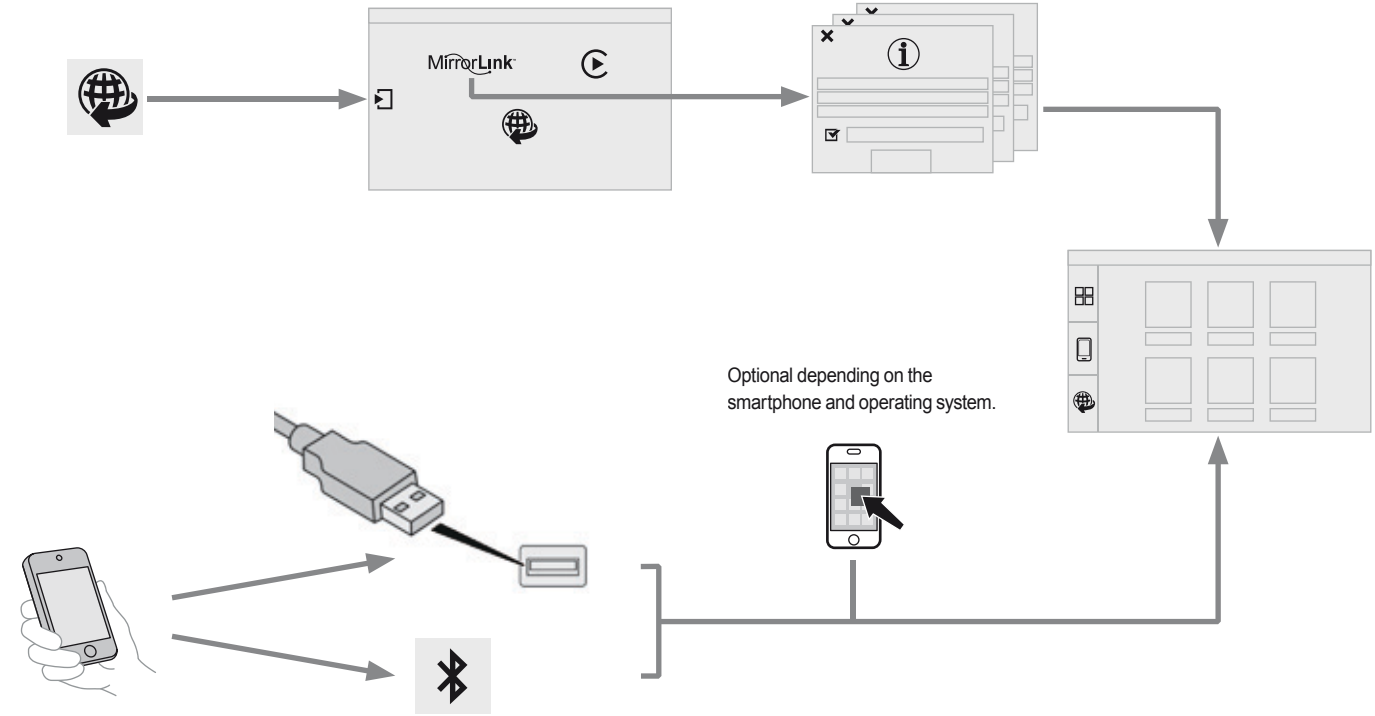
Some smartphones of the latest generation do not support this standard.

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Connected services → Secondary page → Bluetooth connections		**Search**	Start the search for a device to connect.
			Connect/Disconnect	Start or end the Bluetooth connection to the selected device.
			Update	Import contacts from the selected telephone to save them in the audio system.
			Delete	Delete the selected telephone.
		✔	**Confirm**	Save the settings.
	Connected services → Secondary page → Transfer rate		**Reset**	Reset the usage monitor, them confirm.
		✔	**Confirm**	
	Connected services → Secondary page → Wi-Fi connection		**All**	Display all Wi-Fi networks.
			Secure	Display secure Wi-Fi networks.
			Remember	Memorise the selected Wi-Fi network(s).
			Add	Add a new Wi-Fi network.
			On/Off	Activate or deactivate a Wi-Fi network.
			Connect	Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it.

MirrorLink™


MirrorLink
Optional depending on the
smartphone and operating system.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i Please note:
- if your smartphone is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.



Start the application on the smartphone (optional, depending on the smartphone and operating system).

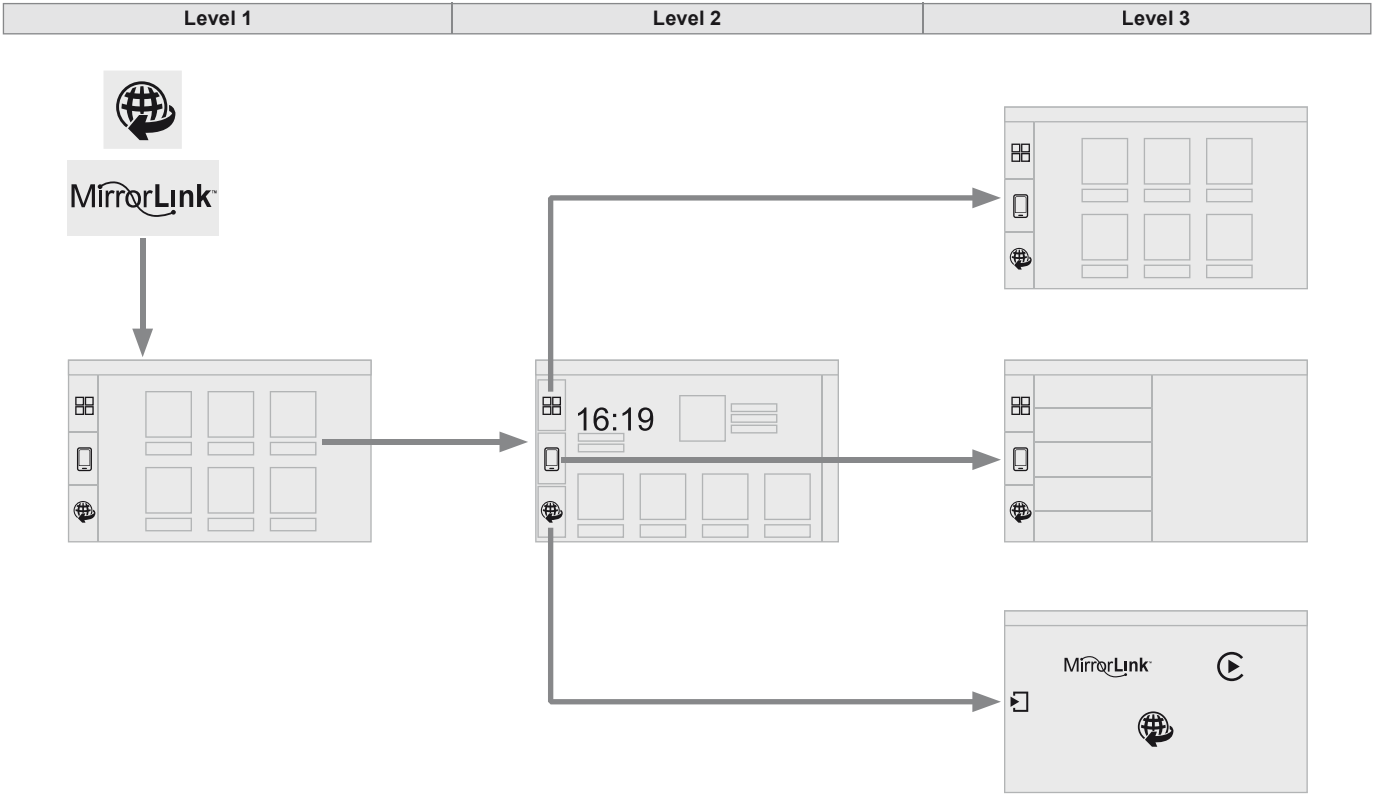
OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

Once connection is established, an page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
If only one application has been downloaded to the smartphone, it starts automatically.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

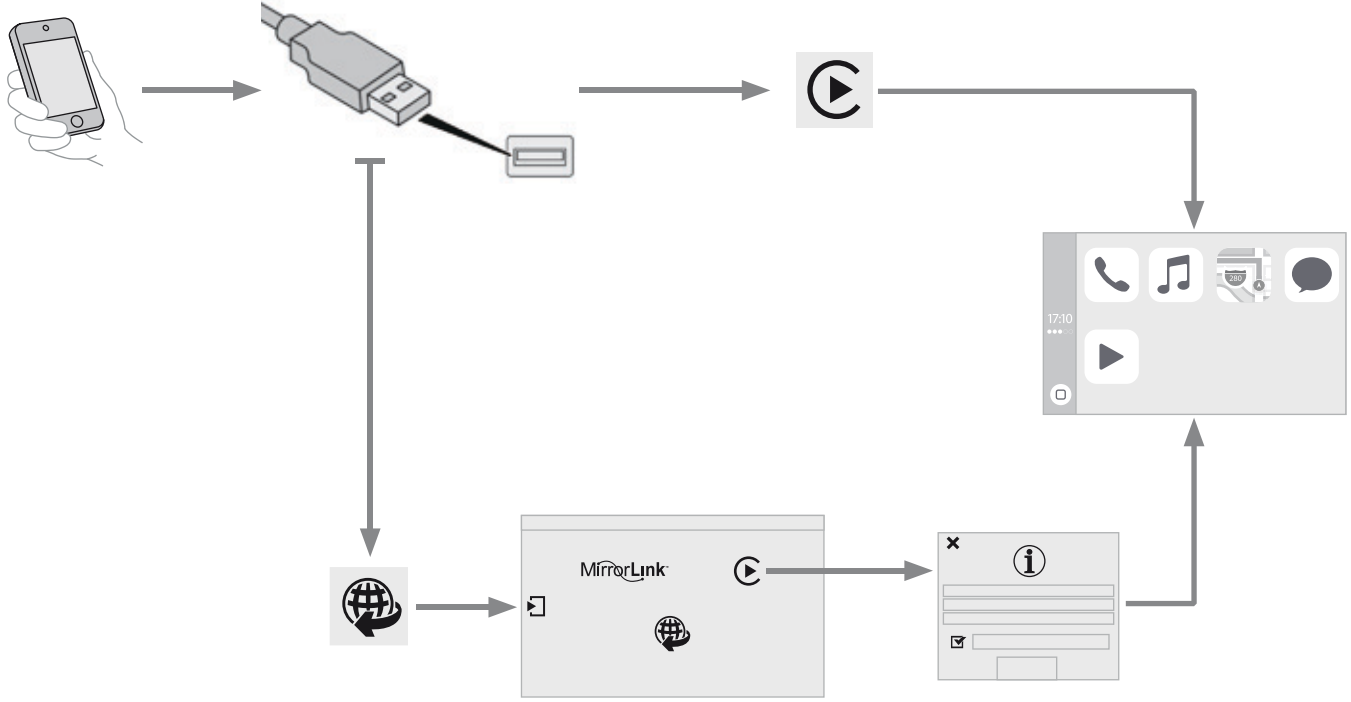
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.
Voice recognition requires a compatible smartphone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
MirrorLink
16:19
MirrorLink

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 	**Connected services** ↓ **MirrorLink™**					Access or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
						Access to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": access or return to the "Car mode" page.
						Access to the "Connected services" primary page.

CarPlay®



CarPlay® smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



On connecting the USB cable, the "**Telephone**" function changes to "**CarPlay**" in the menu carrousel.
Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone is charged while connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.



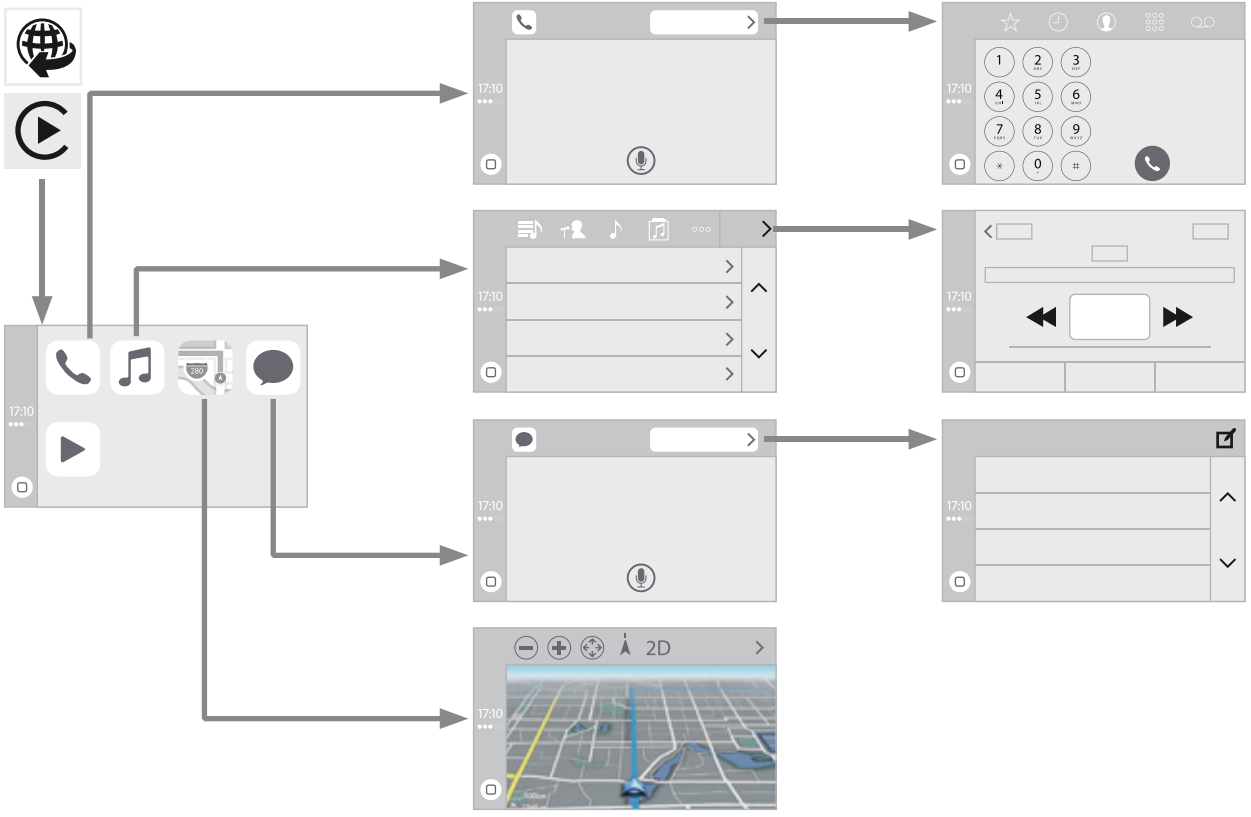
Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

During the procedure, one or more screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed on connection.

Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Connected services ↓ Apple® CarPlay®		Telephone	☆	Favourites	The "Telephone" function is placed automatically in "Siri" voice mode. Press on "Display contacts" for access to the telephone menus.
					Calls	
					Contacts	
					Keypad	
					Messages	
			Music		Lists	Press on "Music" to browse and select the tracks on your smartphone. Press on "Playing" for access to the track currently playing.
					Artists	
					Tracks	
					Albums	
					Other...	
			Plan	›	Destinations	Press on "Destinations" to search for an address by "Siri" voice command or by using the keypad. The GPS function is through the telephone's 3G, 4G or Wi-Fi internet connection.
			Messages	›	Display messages	The "Messages" function is place automatically in "Siri" voice mode to speak the message and the addressee. Press on "Display messages" for access to the messages.
			Playing			Access to the track currently playing.

Touch screen tablet

This system gives access to:
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio and display configuration menus,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
- the display of alert messages,
- the display of ambient temperature (a blue snow flake appears when there is a risk of ice),
- the display of the trip computer.

And, depending on equipment, it allows:
- the display of visual parking sensors information,
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.

! As a safety measure, some functions can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary. When the vehicle moves off, their display is interrupted.

General operation

Recommendations

It is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through lists, moving the map...).
A light wipe is not enough.
The screen does not recognise pressing with more than one finger.
This technology allows use at all temperatures and when wearing gloves.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen tablet.
Do not touch the touch screen tablet with wet hands.
Uses a soft clean cloth to clean it.

Principles

Press the "**MENU**" button for access to the different menus, then press the virtual buttons. Each menu is displayed over one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



Use this button to go to the secondary page.



Use this button to return to the primary page.

i After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.



Use this button for access to additional information and to the settings for certain functions.



Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to quit.

Menus

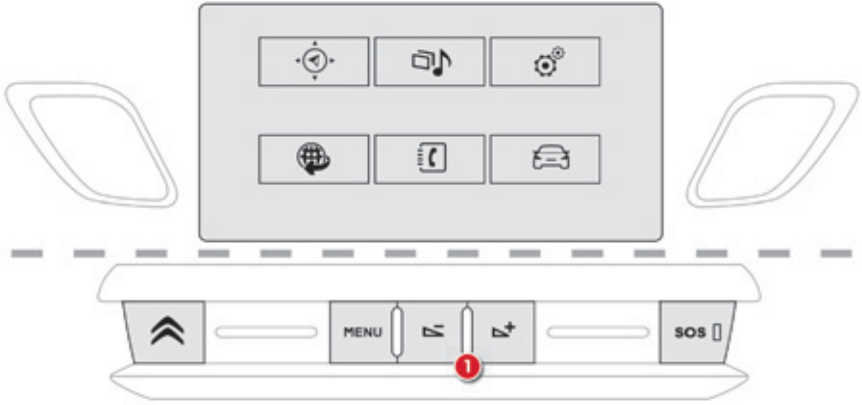
MENU Press this button, then choose the desired menu.

Navigation
Navigation is available depending on country and/or trim level.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Radio Media
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Settings
Allows configuration of the display and the system.
Refer to the corresponding section.

Connected services.
(Depending on equipment).
Allows you to run some of your smartphone's applications via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.



Telephone
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Driving
Allows access to the trip computer and, depending on version, the adjustment of settings for certain functions.
Refer to the corresponding section.

1. Volume / mute.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

E5
E10

Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

i The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

B7

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



B10

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20
B30

The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel fuel at low temperature

In temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in the summer diesel fuels may result in abnormal operation of the fuel supply system. To avoid this, the use of winter diesel fuels is recommended, keeping the tank topped up to more than 50% of its capacity.
If in spite of this you experience difficulties starting the engine in temperatures below -15°C (+5°F), simply leave the vehicle in a garage or a heated workshop for a while.

i **Travelling abroad**

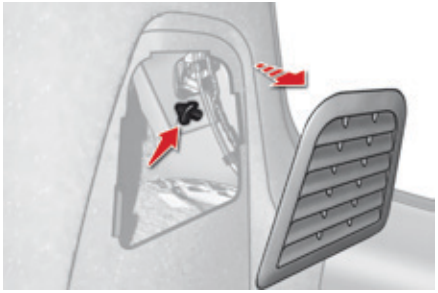
Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name...) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact your dealer.

Rear lamps



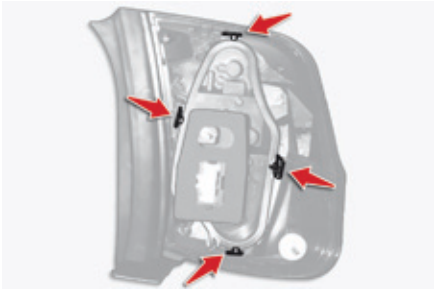
1. **Brake / sidelamps (P21/5W).**
2. **Direction indicators (PY21W amber).**
3. **Foglamp, right-hand side (PR21W red)**
   Reversing lamp, left-hand side (P21W).

The location of the reversing lamp or foglamp may vary depending on the side on which the rear lamp is positioned (left or right).
Amber or red bulbs, such as those for the direction indicators and rear foglamp, must be replaced by bulbs of the same rating and colour.
The lamps on the tailgate are dummy units. They are there for aesthetic purposes only.



Changing bulbs

- Open the boot,
- remove the access flap from the corresponding side trim panel,
- unscrew the butterfly nut securing the lamp unit,
- unclip the lamp unit connector,
- from the outside, extract the lamp unit carefully pulling it in the centreline of the vehicle,



- spread the four tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.
Take care to engage the lamp unit in its guides, while keeping it in line with the vehicle.

Refitting the access flap



Position the three hooks **A** of the flap at the bottom.



Slide the flap to position it correctly.



Tilt the flap upwards and position the hooks **B** under the boot trim.
Raise the flap.

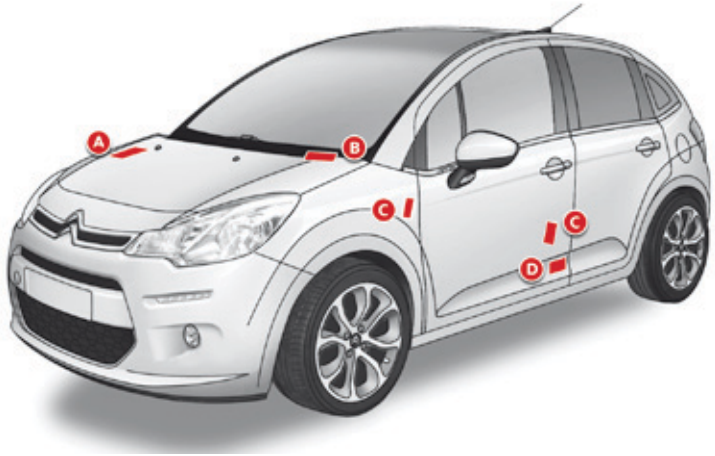
Changing the number plate lamp bulbs (W5W)



- Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the outer holes of the lens.
- Push it outwards to unclip.
- Remove the lens.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle identification number (VIN) under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the bodywork near the passenger compartment filter.

B. Vehicle identification number on the bottom edge of the windscreen aperture.
This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
The self-destroying label on the left-hand or right-hand centre pillar carries the following information.

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European type approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the gross vehicle weight,
- the gross train weight,
- the maximum front axle weight,
- the maximum rear axle weight.

D. Tyre/paint label.
This label on the left centre pillar, driver's side, carries the following information:

- the tyre pressures, for unladen and laden conditions,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating of the tyre),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

Emergency or assistance call





Localised Emergency Call

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call"* centre.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call.
The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

Localised Emergency Call immediately locates your vehicle, makes contact with you in your language** and - if necessary - organises sending of the appropriate emergency services**. In countries where the service is not operational, or if the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is directed straight to the emergency services (112) without location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the CITROËN Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

* Depending on the terms and conditions for the service, available from dealers, and technological and technical limits.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

If the orange indicator lamp is on fixed: the back-up battery should be replaced.
In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand's dealer network, we suggest that you have a dealer check and, if desired, modify the configuration of these services.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

7-inch touch screen tablet

GPS satellite navigation - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	10
Steering mounted controls	12
Menus	13
Navigation	14
Navigation - Guidance	22
Traffic	26
Radio Media	28
Radio	34
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	36
Media	38
Settings	40
Connected services	48
MirrorLink™	48
CarPlay®	52
Telephone	54
Frequently asked questions	62

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

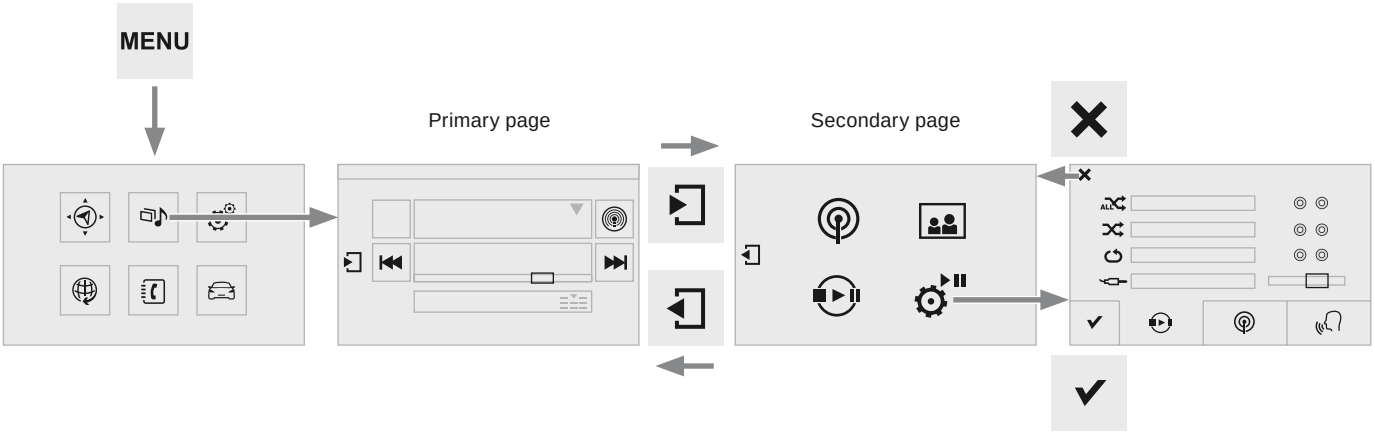
As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. The display of an energy economy mode message signals that electrical systems operating are going into standby.
Refer to the energy economy mode section.

First steps

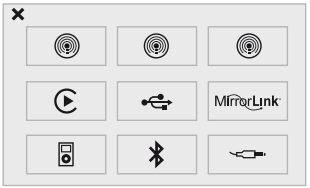
Use the buttons arranged below the touch screen tablet for access to the menu carousel, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.
Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.

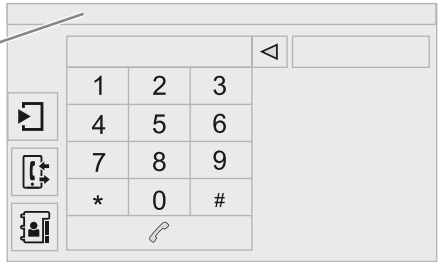


Short-cuts: using the touch buttons in the upper band of the touch screen tablet, it is possible to go directly to the selection of the audio source or the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- "FM" / "DAB"* / "AM"* stations.
- "USB" memory stick.
- Smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth®* and Bluetooth® audio streaming*.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).



MENU Press **Menu** to display the menu carousel.

Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).

Increase volume.

Reduce volume.

Mute the sound by pressing simultaneously on the volume increase and reduce buttons.
Unmute the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

In very high temperatures, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map...). A simple wipe will not be enough. Pressing with more than one finger is not recognised.
The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.

To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) without any additional product.
Do not use pointed objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls





Radio: select the previous/next preset station.
Media: select a genre / artist / folder from the list.
Select the previous/next entry in a menu.



Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.
Media: Select next track.
Media, press and hold: fast forward.
Jump in the list.



Change the audio source.
Confirm a selection.
Call/end call on the telephone.
Press for more than 2 seconds: access to the telephone menu.



Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.
Media: select previous track.
Media, press and hold: fast back.
Jump in the list.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute: cut the sound by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Menus

Navigation

(Depending on equipment)



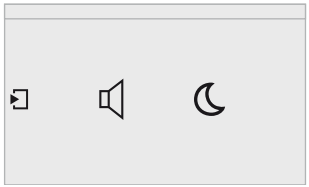
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

Radio Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

Settings



Adjust the settings for sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

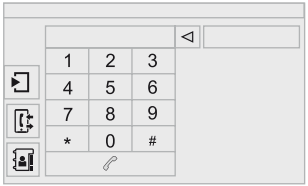
Connected services

(Depending on equipment)



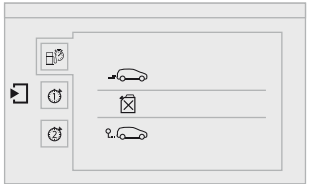
Operate certain applications on your smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Telephone



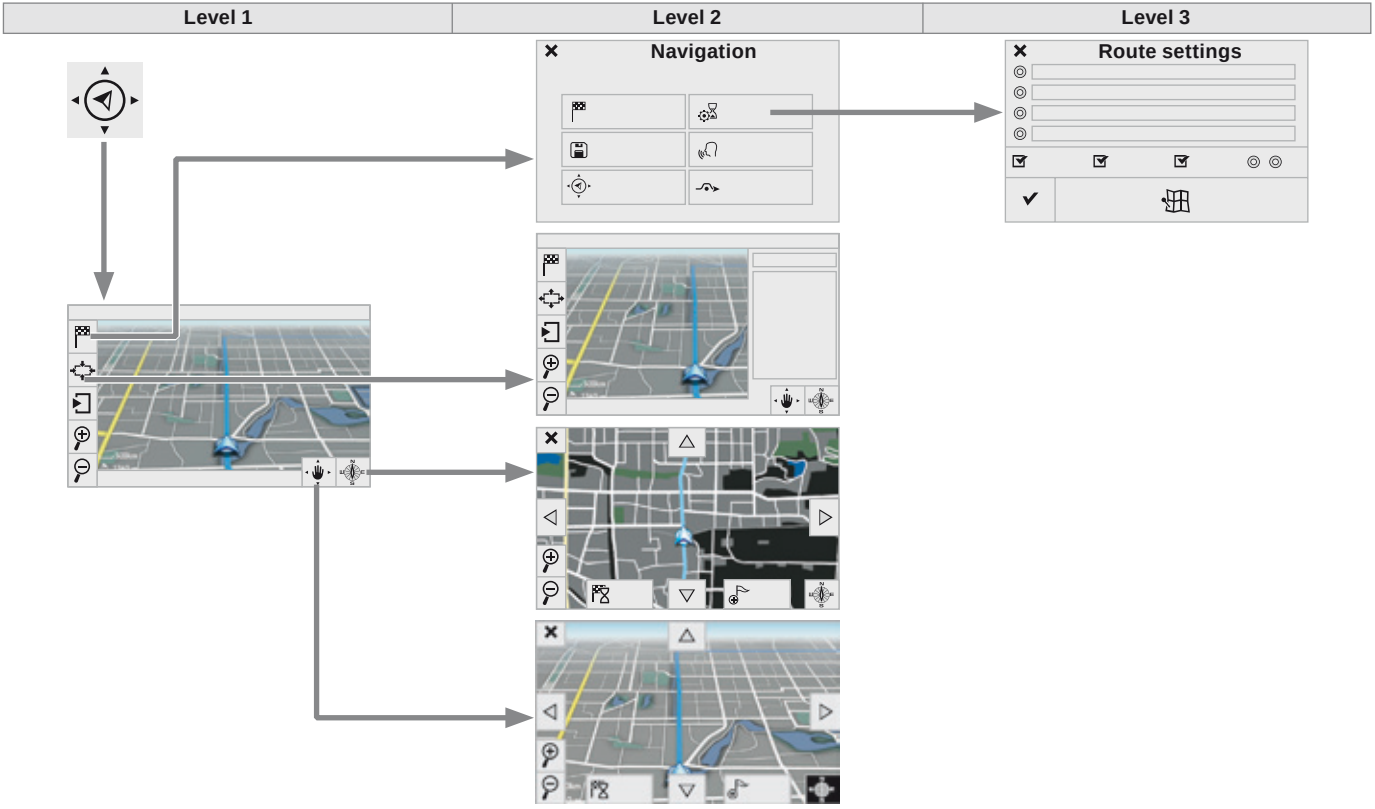
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.
Access to the CarPlay® function after connection of your smartphone by USB cable.

Driving



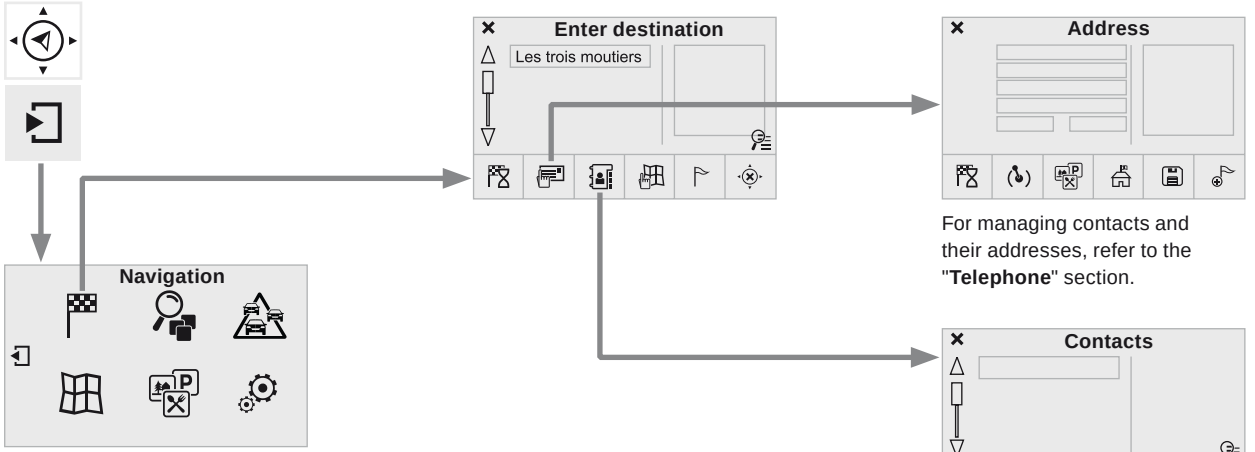
Access to the trip computer.
Activate, deactivate or enter settings for certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation ↓ Settings Navigation		Enter destination			Display recent destinations
			Route settings		Fastest	Choose the navigation criteria. The map displays the route chosen according to these criteria.
					Shortest	
					Time/distance	
					Ecological	
					Tolls	
					Ferries	
					Traffic	
					Strict-Close	
					Show route on map	Display the map and start navigation.
					Confirm	Save the options.
			Save current location			Save the current address.
			Stop navigation			Delete the navigation information.
			Voice synthesis			Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names.
			Diversion			Detour from your initial route by a determined distance.
	Navigation					Display in text mode
						Zoom in.
						Zoom out.
						Display in full screen mode. Use the arrows to move the map.
						Switch to 2D map.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

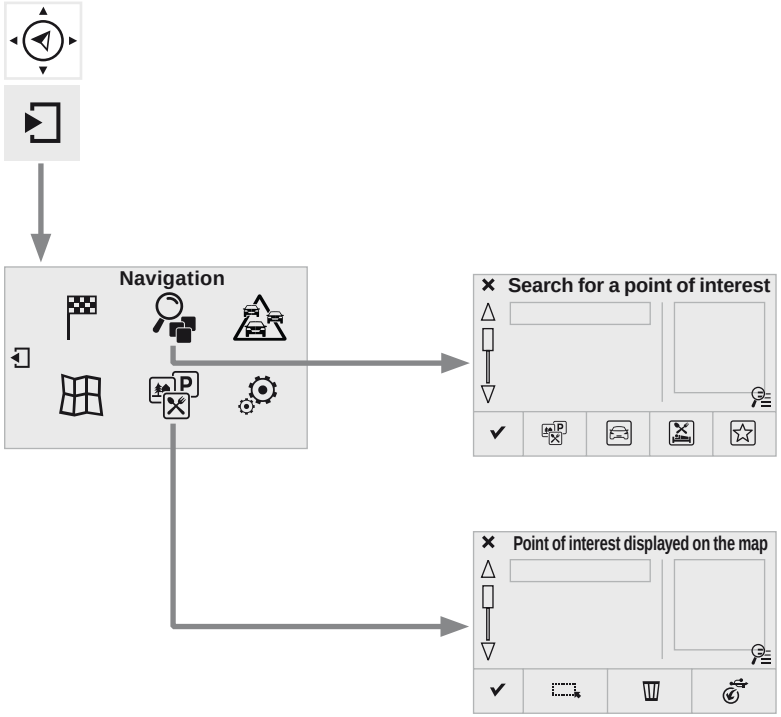


For managing contacts and their addresses, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

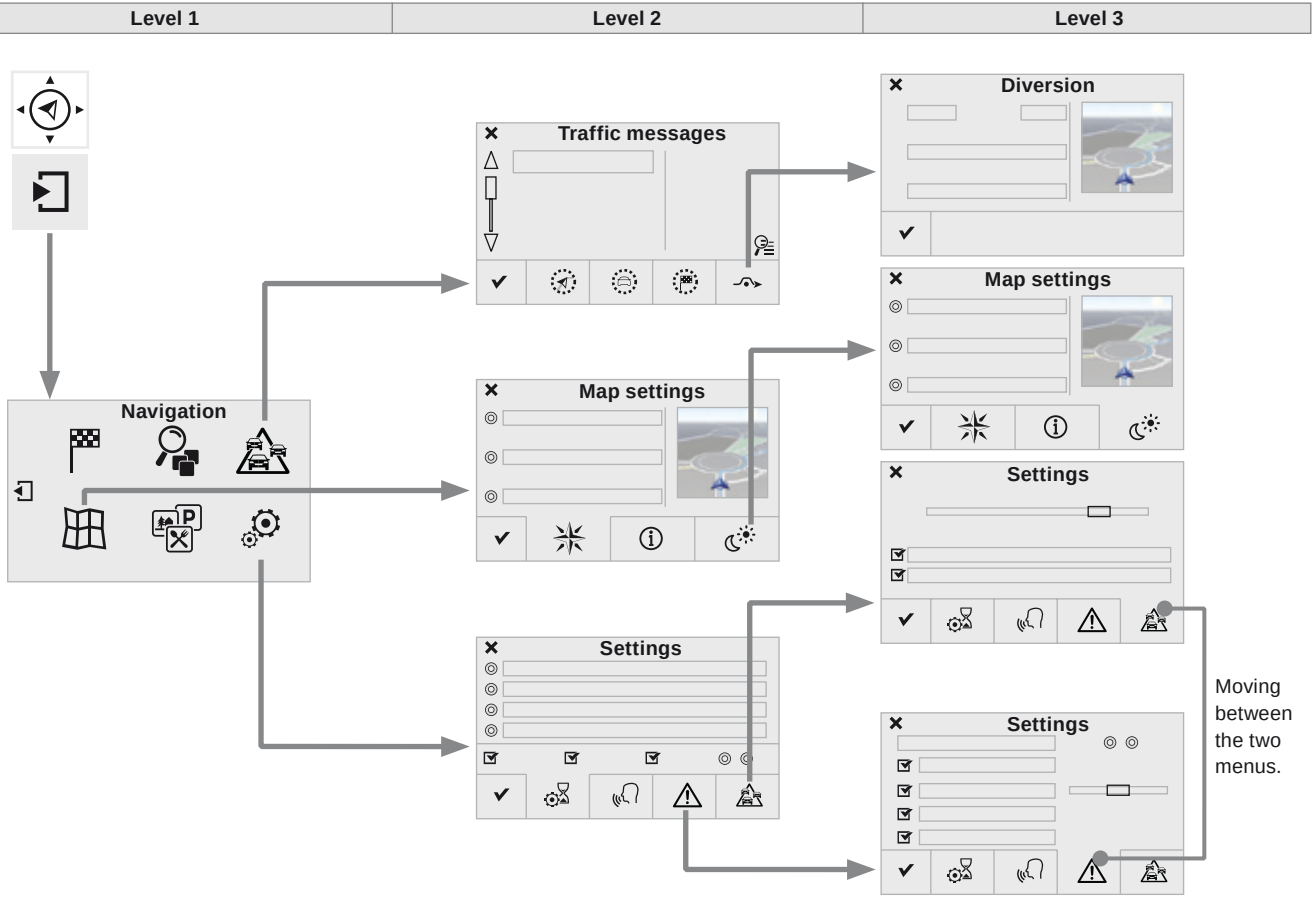
To use the telephone functions, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation Secondary page Enter destination		**Address**		Current loc.	Address settings
					Point of interest	
					Town center	
					Save	Save the current address.
					Add waypoint	Add a waypoint to the route.
					Navigate to	Press to calculate the route.
			Contacts		Addresses	Select a contact then calculate the route.
					View	
					Navigate to	
					Search for contact	
					Call	
			On the map			Display the map and zoom to view the roads.
			Itinerary			Create, add or delete a waypoint or view the itinerary.
			Stop			Delete navigation information.
			Navigate to			Press to calculate the route.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
  	**Navigation** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Search for POI**		**All POIs**		List of categories available. After choosing the category, select the points of interest.
			**Motor**		
			**Dining/hotels**		
			**Personal**		
		✔	**Search**		Save the settings.
  	**Navigation** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Show POIs**		**Select all**		Choose the display settings for POIs.
			**Delete**		
			**Import POIs**		
		✔	**Confirm**		Save the options.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Navigation
Traffic messages
Map settings
Settings
Diversion
Map settings
Settings
Settings
Moving between the two menus.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Navigation → Secondary page → Traffic messages	On the route		Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.
	Around vehicle		
	Near destination		
	Detour	◎ Detour over a distance	
		◎ Recalculate route	
	✔ Finish		Save your selections.
Navigation → Secondary page → Map settings	Orientation	◎ Flat view north heading	Choose the display and orientation of the map.
		◎ Flat view vehicle heading	
		◎ Perspective view	
	Maps		
	Aspect	◎ "Day" map colour	
		◎ "Night" map colour	
		◎ Auomatic day/night	
	✔ Confirm		Save the settings.
Navigation → Secondary page → Settings	Route settings		Enter settings and choose the volume for the voice and announcement of street names.
	Voice		
	Alarm!		
	Traffic options		
	✔ Confirm		Save your selections.

Navigation - Guidance

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Select the **"Country:"** from the list offered, then in the same way the "**City:**" or its post code, the "**Road:**", the "**N°:**".
Confirm each time.



Select "**Save**" to save the address entered as a contact entry.
The system allows up to 200 entries.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Choose the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**" or "**Shortest**" or "**Time/ distance**" or "**Ecological**".



Choose the restriction criteria: "**Tolls**", "**Ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".



Select "**Confirm**".

Or



Press on "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.



To delete navigation information, press on "**Settings**".



Press on "**Stop navigation**".



To resume navigation press on "**Settings**".



Press on "**Resume guidance**".

Towards a recent destination

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".



Select an address from the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a contact

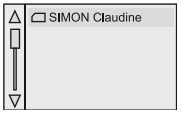
To be able to use navigation "towards a contact in the directory", it is first necessary to enter the address for your contact.

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

Select "**Contacts**".



Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start navigation.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



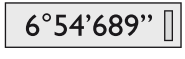
Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Enter the "**Longitude:**" then the "**Latitude:**".



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a point on the map



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**On the map**".

Zooming in on the map shows points with information.

A long press on a point opens its content.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Search for POI**".



Select "**All POIs**",

Or



"**Motor**",

Or



"**Dining/hotels**".

An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.
The detailed procedure is available on: http://citroen.navigation.com.

Risk areas / Danger zone alert settings



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Alarm!**" (Alert).

It is then possible to activate Risk areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk areas alert to be defined.



Select "**Confirm**".

! This series of alerts and displays is only available if Risk areas have first been downloaded and installed on the system.

Traffic

Traffic information

Display of messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Traffic messages**".

Choose filter settings for:



"**On the route**",

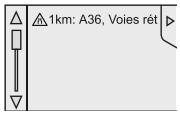


"**Around**",



"**Near destination**", filters to fine-tune the list of messages.

Press again to remove the filter.



Select the message from the list offered.

Select the magnifying glass to have voice information.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

Setting filters

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Traffic options**".

Select:
- "**Be advised of new messages**",
- "**Speak messages**".

Then enter the filter radius.

Select "**Confirm**".

We recommend a filter radius of:
- 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
- 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

Receiving TA messages

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

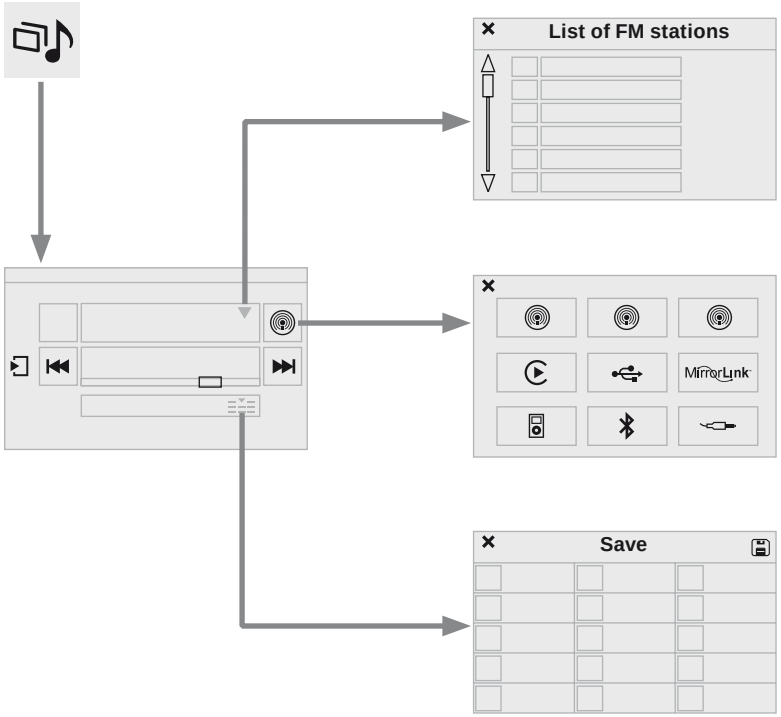
Select "**Voice**".

Off On Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".

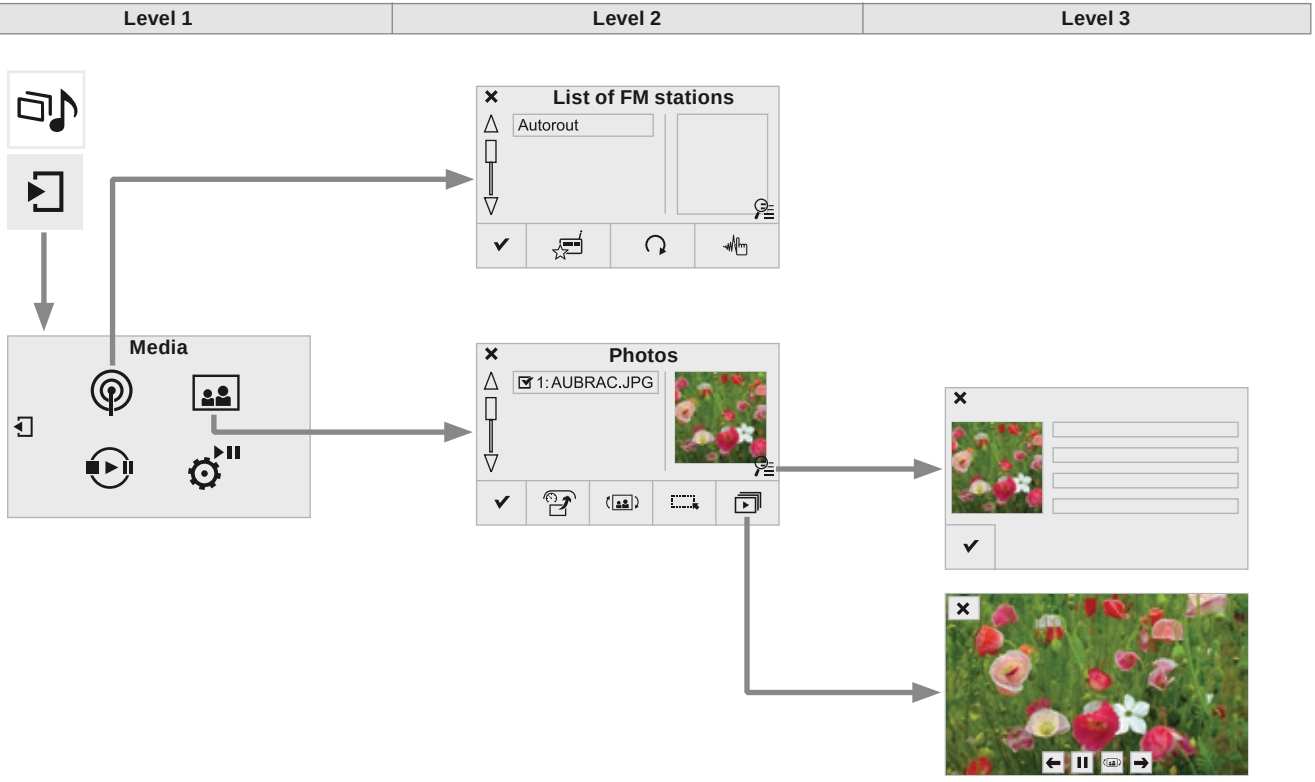
The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

Radio Media

Level 1	Level 2

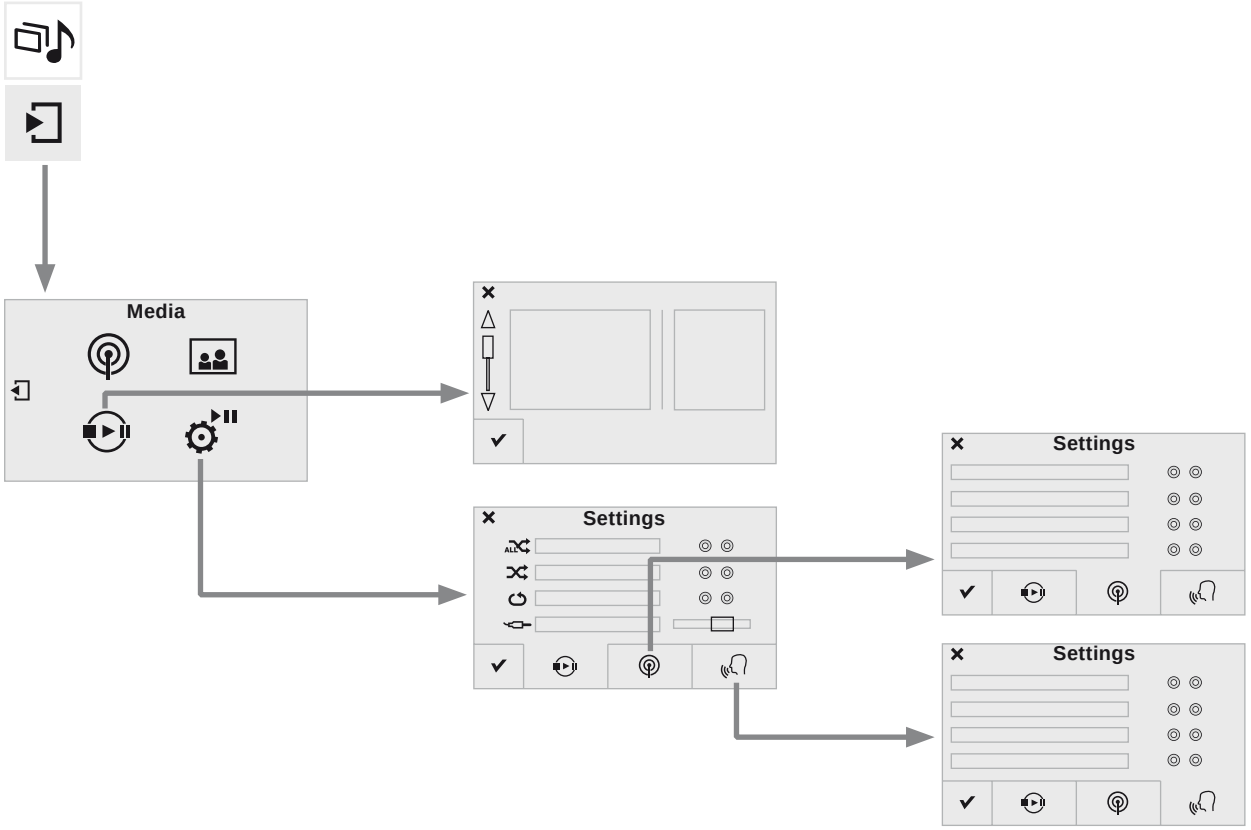


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Radio Media ↓ **List**	▼	**List of FM stations**	Press on a radio station to select it.
	Radio Media ↓ **Source**	Radio FM	**FM Radio**	Select change of source.
		Radio DAB	**DAB Radio**	
		Radio AM	**AM Radio**	
			USB	
		MirrorLink	**MirrorLink**	
			CarPlay	
			iPod	
			Bluetooth	
			AUX	
	Radio Media ↓ **Save (preset)**			Press an empty location to Save it.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
List of FM stations
Autorout
Media
Photos
1: AUBRAC.JPG

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Radio Media → Secondary page → Radio list	**Save**		Press a radio station to select it.
	Update list		Update the list of stations received.
	Frequency		Enter the desired radio frequency.
	✔ **Confirm**		Save the settings.
Radio Media → Secondary page → Photos	**Home screen**		Display the selected photo in the home page.
	Rotate		Rotate the photo 90°.
	Select all		Select all the photos in the list. Press again to deselect.
	Slideshow	← Previous photo.	Display the photos in sequence, full-screen. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .bmp, .png.
		⏸ ▷ Pause / Play.	
		→ Next photo.	
	✔ **Full screen**		Display the selected photo full-screen.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Radio Media ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Media list**					Presentation of the last media used.
	Radio Media ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Settings**		**Media** ↓ **Settings**	ALL	Shuffle (all tracks)	Choose the play settings.
					Shuffle (current album)	
					Repeat	
					Aux. amplification	
			Radio ↓ **Settings**		RDS options	Activate or deactivate the settings.
					DAB/FM station tracking	
					Display Radio Text	
					Digital radio slideshow display	
			Announcements ↓ **Settings**		Traffic announcements (TA)	Activate or deactivate the settings.
					News - Weather	
					Sport - Programm info	
					Flash - Unforeseen events	
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

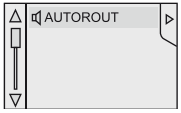
Select "**List**" in the primary page.

Or

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.



Select a radio station from the list offered.

Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.

To select a preset radio station.

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Save**".



Select a preset radio station in the list.

If necessary, select change of source.



Select "**FM Radio**".



Or

"**AM Radio**".



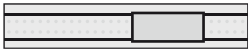
! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing a radio frequency

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



By automatic frequency search



Press ◂ or ▸ to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.

THEN



Select change source.



Select "**FM Radio**".

Or



"**AM Radio**".

OR



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Press on **Frequency**.

THEN



Enter the frequency in full (e.g.: 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then "**Confirm**".

FRANCE BLEU

Changing radio station

Pressing the name of the current radio station brings up a list.

To change radio station press the name of the desired station.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).



Press on "**Save**" (preset).

Mémoire 1

Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.

A long press on a number saves (presets) the station.

Or



A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.

Recalling preset stations



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**Save**" (preset).

Activating / Deactivating RDS



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



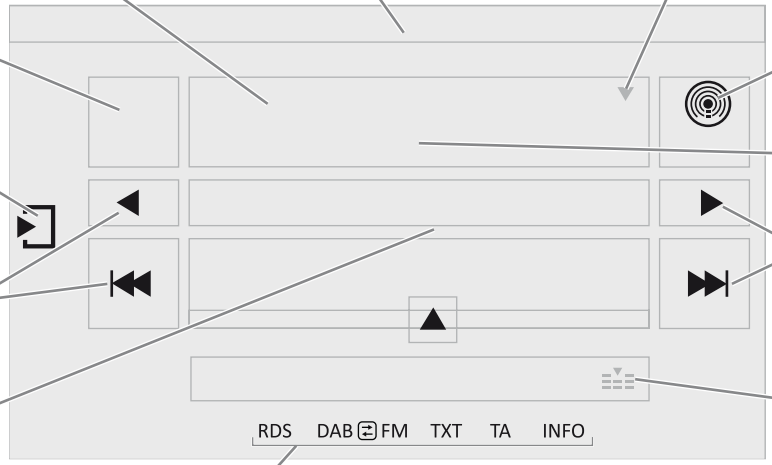
Select "**Radio**".



Activate/deactivate "**RDS options**".

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio



Display of the name of the current station.

Short-cut: access to the choice of audio source and the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).

Select the radio station.

Any thumbnail broadcast by the station.

Select the audio source. Display the "DAB" band.

Secondary page.

Display of "Radiotext" for the current station.

Next "Multiplex". Next radio station.

Previous "Multiplex". Previous radio station.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 15. Short press: select the preset radio station. Long press: preset a radio station.

Display the name and number of the "multiplex" service being used.

Display of options:
if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,
if active and available, the display will be blank.

If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.

Journaline® is a text-based information service designed for digital radio systems.
It provides text-based information structured around topics and sub-topics.
This service is available from the "LIST OF DAB STATIONS" page.

Digital radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page.
The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Select "**DAB Radio**".



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

or
Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

Select the radio station from the list offered.

DAB / FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB/FM station tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Radio**".



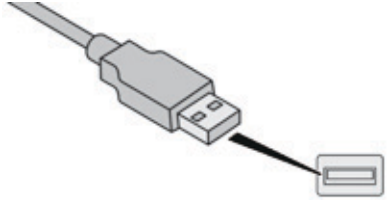
Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then "**Confirm**".

If "DAB/FM station tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM station tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or on connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



This source is only available if the "Auxiliary socket" option has been activated in the "Media" settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

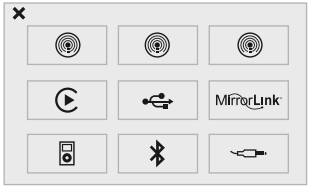
First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

Selection of source

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

FM

Select change of source.



Choose the source.

SRC

The steering mounted **SRC** (source) button can be used to go to the next media source, available if the source is active.

Information and advice

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

! The system supports USB mass storage portable players, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripheral devices, not recognised by the system on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (file allocation table).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i It is recommended that the USB cable for the portable device is used.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

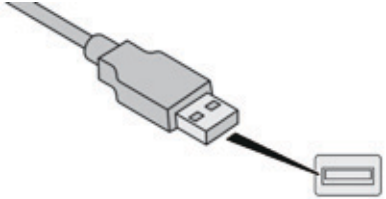
Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section, then "**Bluetooth**".
Choose the "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth® peripheral.

Connecting Apple® players



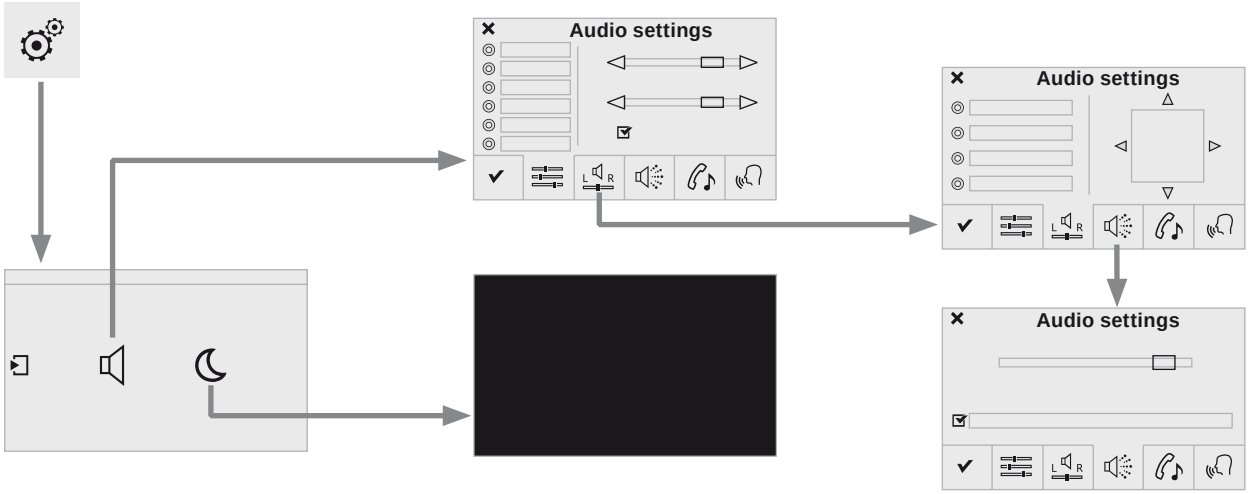
Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

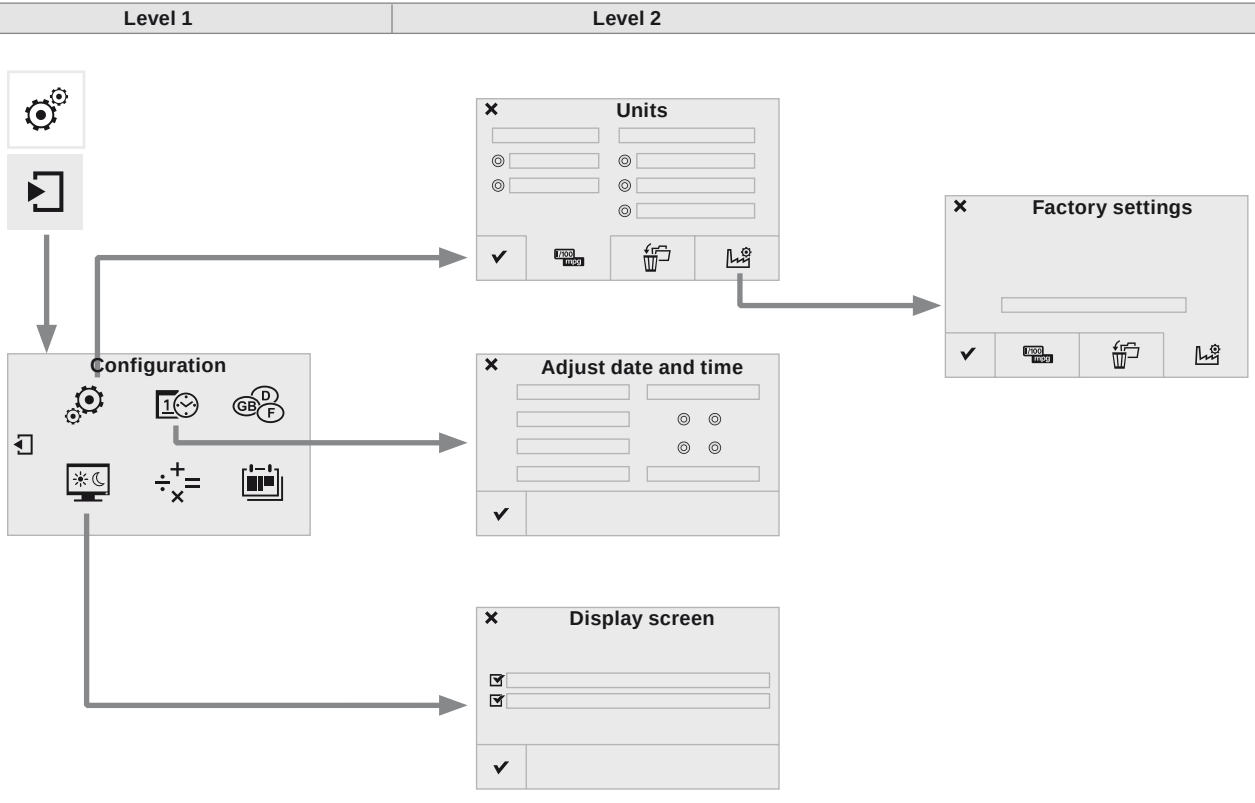
The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Settings

Level 1	Level 2

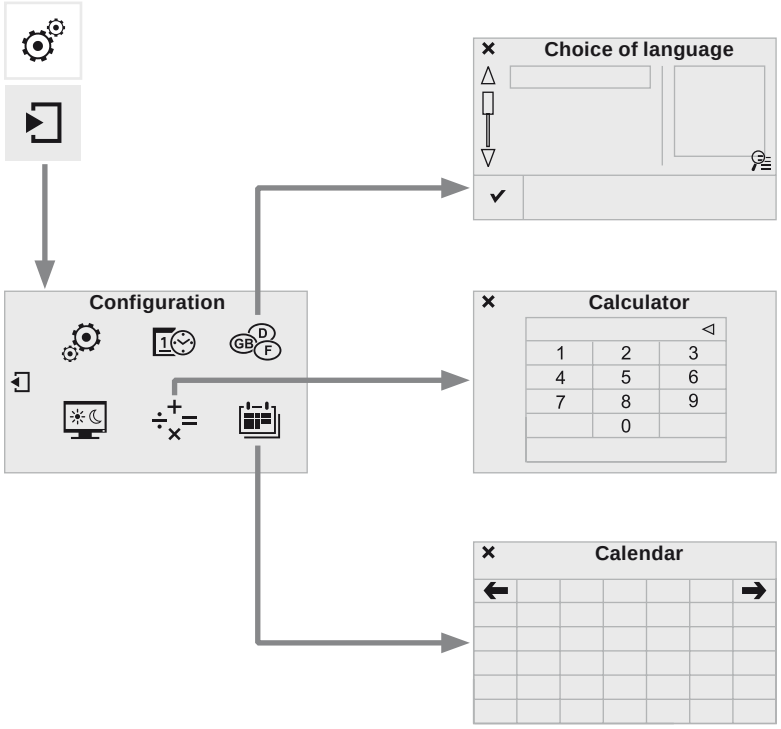


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	**Settings** ↓ **Audio settings**		**Ambience**	Choose the sound ambience.
			**Balance**	Sound distribution using the Arkamys® system.
			**Sound effects**	Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.
			**Ringtones**	Set the telephone ringtone and volume.
			**Voice**	Set the volume and voice for speaking street names.
		✔	**Confirm**	Save your settings.
	**Settings** ↓ **Turn off screen**			Function that turns off the display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.


Level 1
Level 2
Configuration
Units
Factory settings
Adjust date and time
Display screen

Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings → Secondary page → System Settings		**Units**	Set the units used to display distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
			Delete data	Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.
			Factory settings	Return to factory settings.
		✔	**Confirm**	Save the settings.
	Settings → Secondary page → Time/Date	✔	**Confirm**	Set the date and time then confirm.
	Settings → Secondary page → Screen settings		**Activate automatic text scrolling**	Activate or deactivate the setting then confirm.
			Activate animations	
		✔	**Confirm**	

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Languages**	✔	**Confirm**	Select the language then confirm.
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Calculator**			Select the calculator.
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Calendar**			Select the calendar.

Audio settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".



Select "**Ambience**"

Or



"**Balance**"

Or



"**Sound effects**"

Or



"**Ringtones**"

Or



"**Voice**".

! The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.

! The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass:**, **Treble:** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.
The settings for **Distribution** and **Balance** are common to all sources.

!
- "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass:**"
- "**Treble:**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**", "**Front only**")
- "**Audible response from touch screen**"
- "**Volume linked to speed**" (Activate/Deactivate)

i On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the passenger compartment.

Modifying system settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**System Settings**".



Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.



Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the list.



Choose the item then select "**Delete**".



Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Screen settings**".



Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**".



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page



Select "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, synchronisation with GPS, the time and its format, then the date.

The system does not manage changes between summer time and winter time automatically (according to country).



Select "**Languages**" to change language.

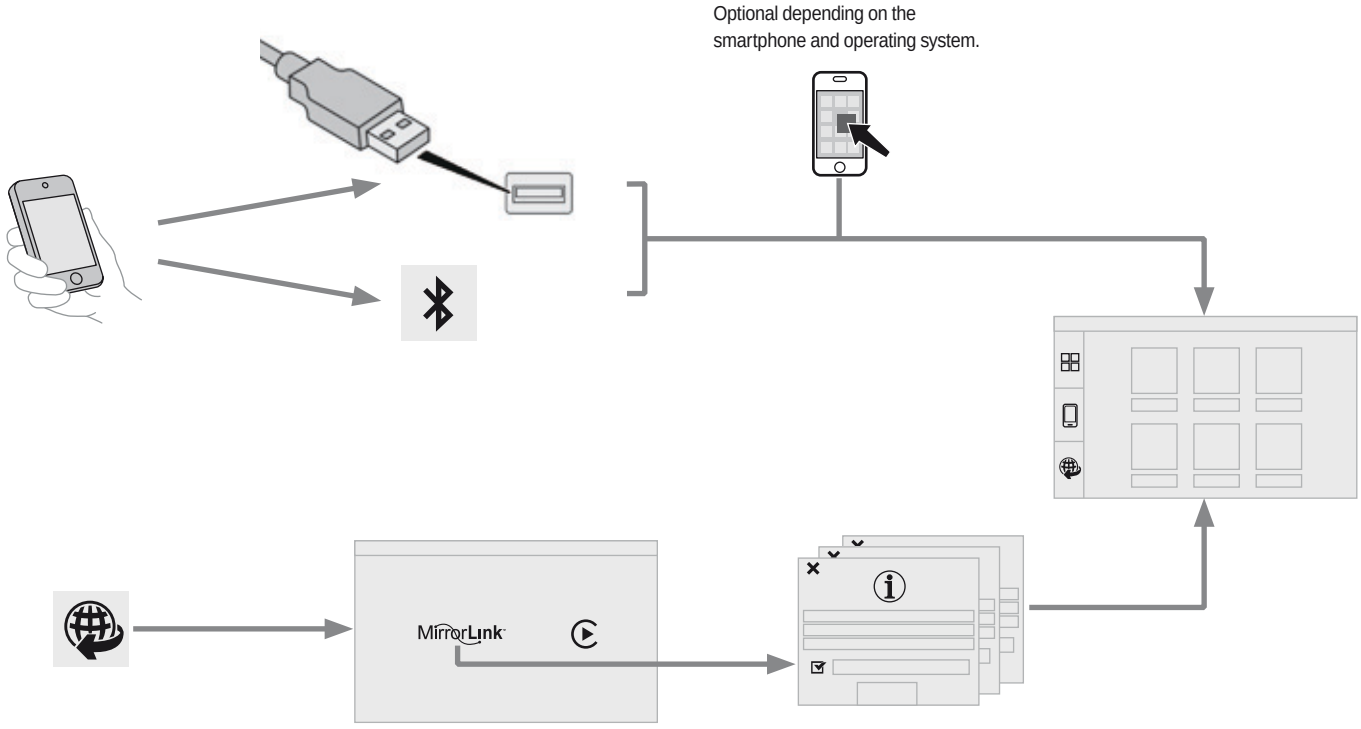


Select "**Calculator**" to display a calculator.



Select "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.

Connected services
MirrorLink™



MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

Please note:
- if your smartphone is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press on "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.

Press on "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Start the application on the smartphone (optional, depending on the smartphone and operating system).

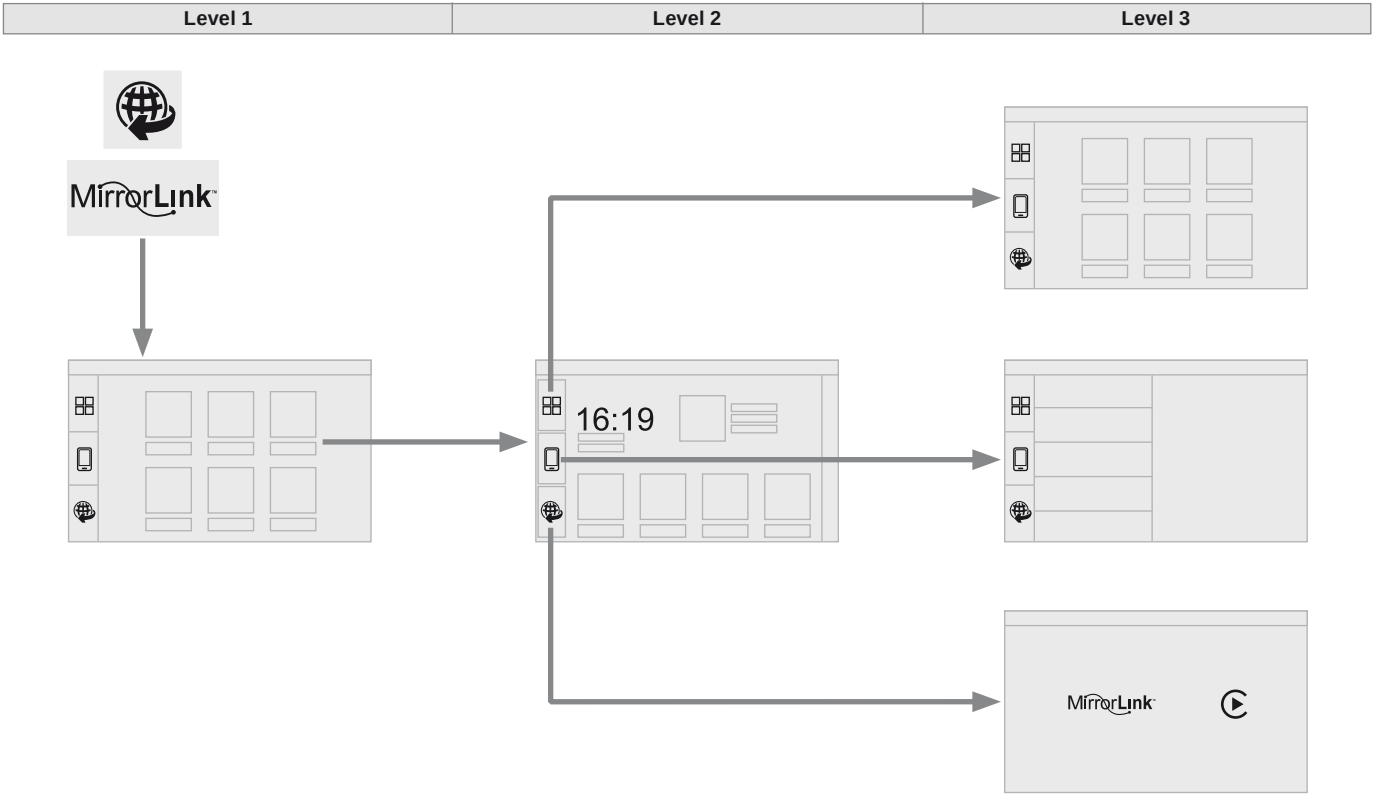
OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

Once connection is established, an page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
If only one application has been downloaded to the smartphone, it starts automatically.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

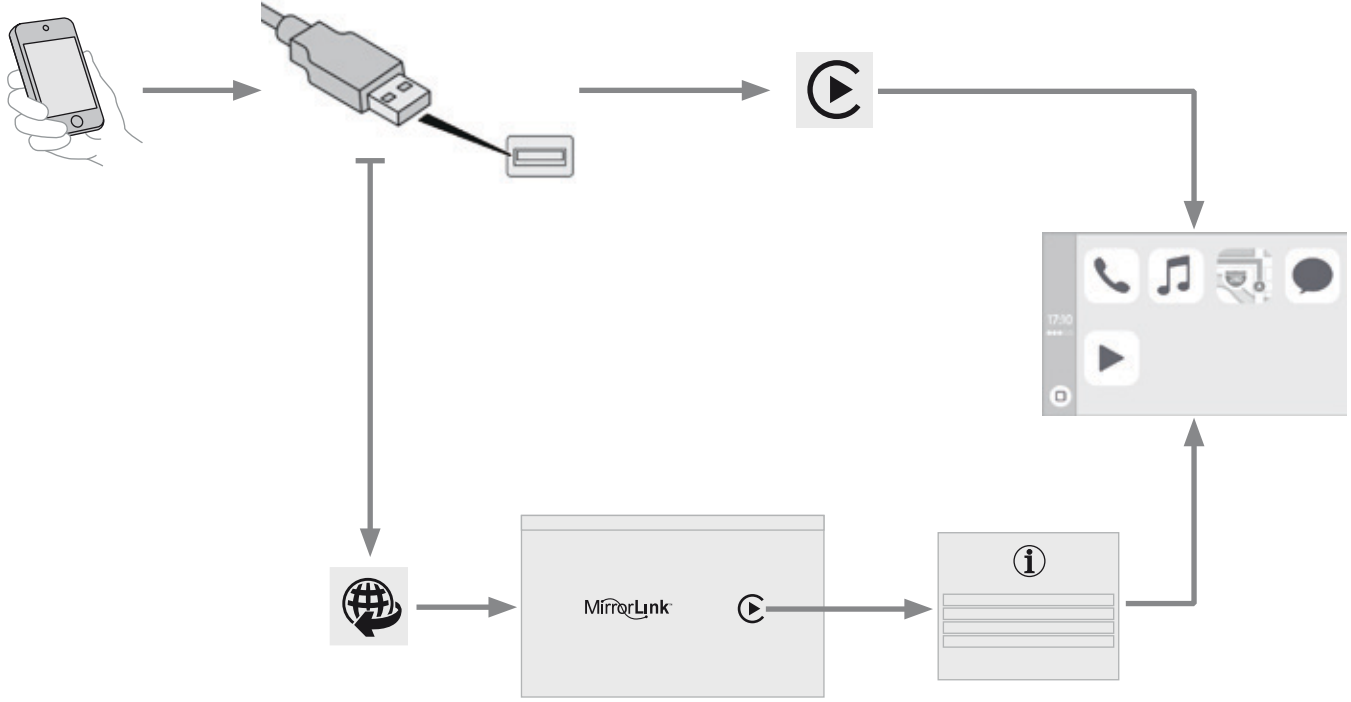
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.
Voice recognition requires a compatible smartphone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth®.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
MirrorLink
16:19
MirrorLink

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Connected services ↓ MirrorLink™					Access or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
 MirrorLink						Access to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": access or return to the "Car mode" page.
						Access to the "Connected services" primary page.

CarPlay®



CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed on the vehicle's screen.
As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

i As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



On connecting the USB cable, the "**Telephone**" function changes to "**CarPlay**" in the menu carousel.
Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone is charged while connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press on "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.



Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

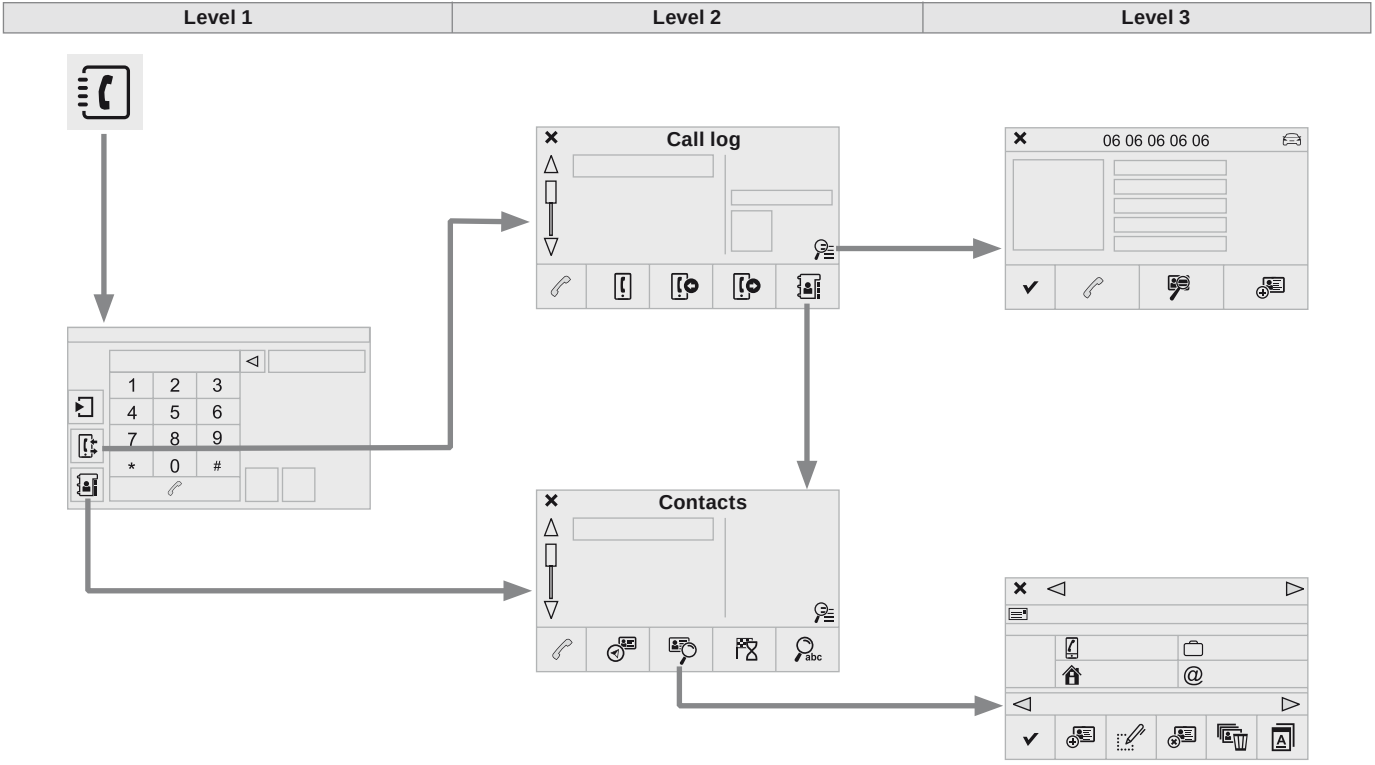
i During the procedure, one or more screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed on connection.

When the telephone menu is displayed, connection of the USB cable causes the display to automatically change to CarPlay mode.
When another menu is displayed, on connection of a USB cable a message is displayed in the upper bar, indicating that CarPlay mode has been activated.
Press Open to display CarPlay mode.

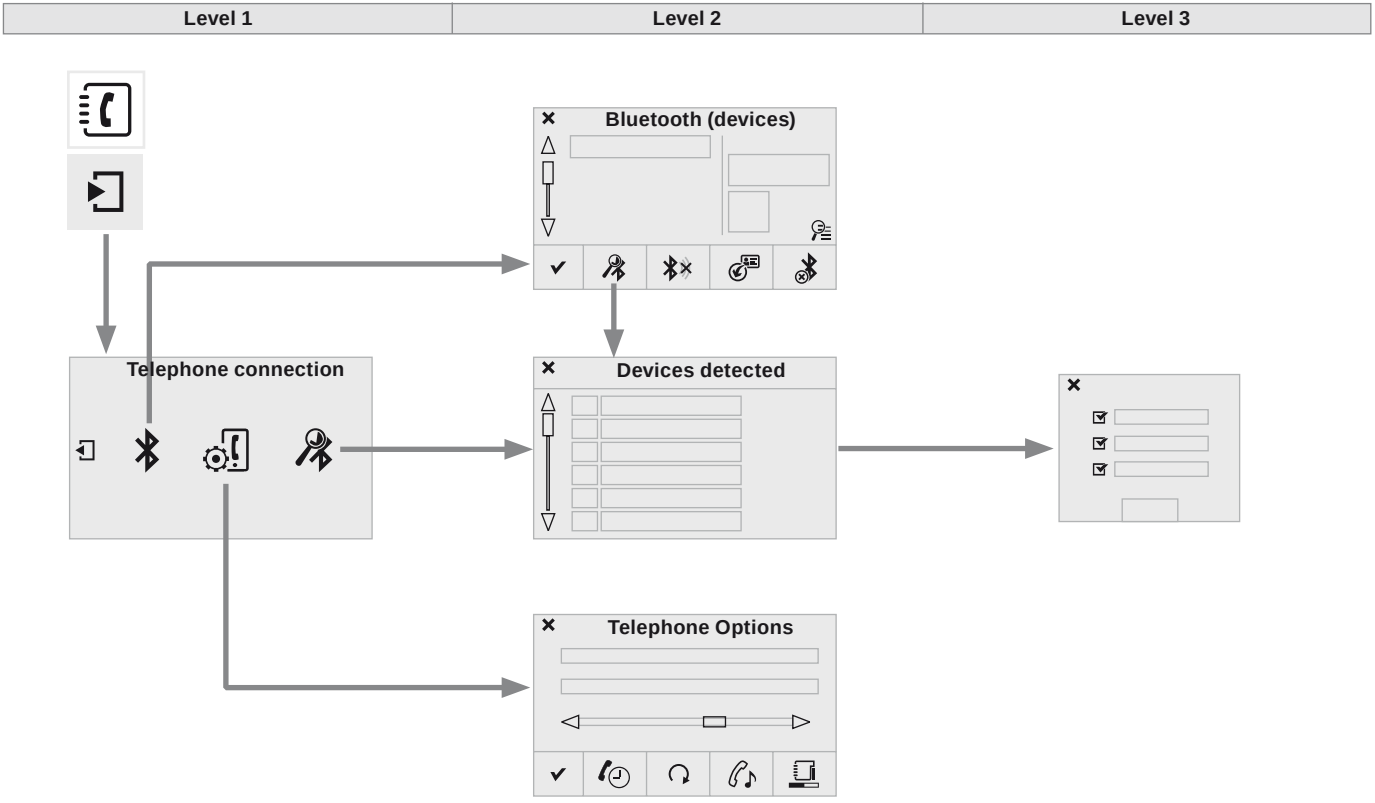
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Telephone


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Call log
06 06 06 06 06
1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9
* 0 #
Contacts
abc

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone → Call log		All calls			After making choices, start the call.
			Incoming calls			
			Outgoing calls			
			Contacts			
			Magnifying glass		View	
					Create	
			Call			
	Telephone → Contacts		Addresses			After making choices, start the call.
			View		Create	
					Modify	
					Delete	
					Delete all	
					By name	
				✔	Confirm	
			Navigate to			
			Search for contact			
			Call			


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Bluetooth (devices)
Telephone connection
Devices detected
Telephone Options

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Bluetooth connection		Search			Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.
			Connect / Disconnect			Start or stop the Bluetooth® connection to the selected peripheral device.
			Update			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.
			Delete			Delete the selected telephone.
		✔	Confirm			Save the settings.
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Search for devices			☑	Telephone	Start the search for peripheral devices.
			Devices detected	☑	Audio streaming	
				☑	Internet	
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Telephone Options		Put on hold			Cut the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.
			Update			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save then in the audio system.
			Ringtones			Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Memory info.			Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth® contacts.
		✔	Confirm			Save the settings.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth® mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Procedure (short) from the telephone

In the Bluetooth® menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.

Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.

Enter this same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.

Procedure from the system

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth® function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**".

Select "**Search for devices**". The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth® function on your telephone off and then on again.



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and "**Confirm**".

Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then "**Confirm**".

Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.

The system offers to connect the telephone:
- in "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- in "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
- in "**Internet**" (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth® standard).

Select one or more profiles and confirm.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

! The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The three profiles may all connect by default.

Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).



The recognised telephone appears in the list.

Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.

! Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.



If not, select "**Update**".

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part, with (Bluetooth® activated).
To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

Connecting a Bluetooth® peripheral device

Automatic reconnection

On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Manual connection



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripherals.

Select the peripheral to connect.



Press on "**Search for devices**".

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Select the peripheral in the list.



Select "**Search for devices**"

Or



"**Connect / Disconnect**" to start or end the Bluetooth connection with the selected device.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.
Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.



Select "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Call log**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

> It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

Managing contacts / entries



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Contacts**".



Select "**View**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact, observing the "international format".

Or



"**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete all**" to delete all information for the selected contact.



Select "**By name**" to view the list of contacts.

Frequently asked questions

The table below gives answers to the most frequently asked questions on your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The navigation settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The Risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Information" function in the list of guidance criteria.
I receive a Risk areas alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for Risk areas located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk areas. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has completed starting up, so that there is GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press on the "Update list" function in the system to update the list of stations received.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

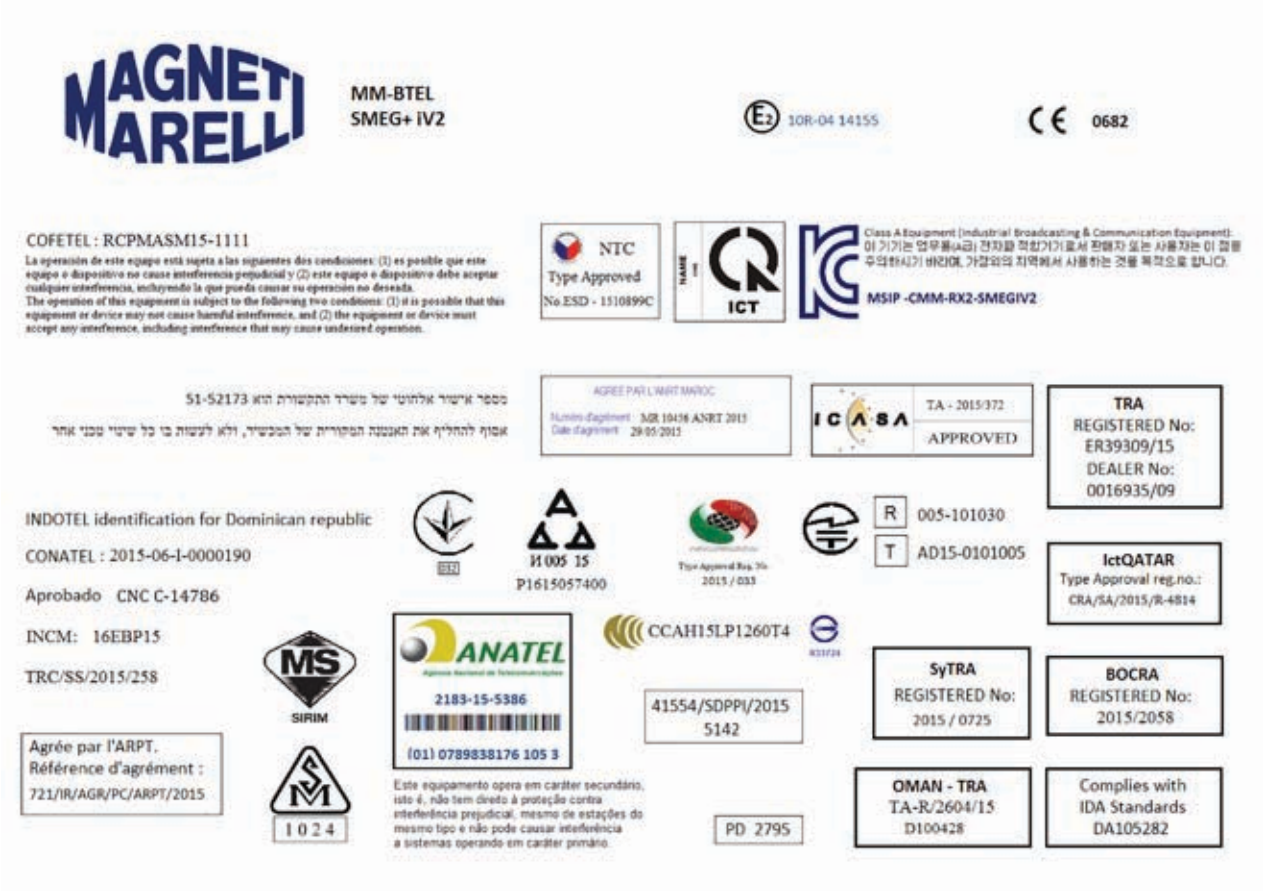
Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing a sound distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
When I select the "All passengers" mode, the distribution is not as I would like.	The choice of an "All passengers" distribution can be programmed.	Modify the distribution setting using the slider on the touch screen.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume:, Bass:, Treble:, Ambience and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings for (Volume:, Bass:, Treble:, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "Visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.citroen.co.uk (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down...).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	


MAGNETI MARELLI
MM-BTEL
SMEG+ iV2
E2 10R-04 14155
CE 0682
COFETEL : RCPMASM15-1111
La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.
The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) it is possible that this equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) the equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
NTC
Type Approved
No.ESD - 1510899C
NAME
ICT
Class A Equipment (Industrial Broadcasting & Communication Equipment)
이 기기는 업무용(A급) 전자파 적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.
MSIP -CMM-RX2-SMEGIV2
מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-52173
אסוף להחליף את האנטנה המסורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי מכני אחר
AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 10436 ANRT 2015
Date d'agrément : 29/05/2015
ICASA
TA - 2015/372
APPROVED
TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER39309/15
DEALER No:
0016935/09
INDOTEL identification for Dominican republic
CONATEL : 2015-06-I-0000190
Aprobado CNC C-14786
INCM: 16EBP15
TRC/SS/2015/258
И 005 15
P1615057400
Type Approval Reg. No.
2015 / 033
R 005-101030
T AD15-0101005
IctQATAR
Type Approval reg.no.:
CRA/SA/2015/R-4814
MS
SIRIM
ANATEL
2183-15-5386
(01) 0789838176 105 3
CCAH15LP1260T4
41554/SDPPI/2015
5142
SyTRA
REGISTERED No:
2015 / 0725
BOCRA
REGISTERED No:
2015/2058
Agrée par l'ARPT.
Référence d'agrément :
721/IR/AGR/PC/ARPT/2015
1024
Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.
PD 2795
OMAN - TRA
TA-R/2604/15
D100428
Complies with
IDA Standards
DA105282

Under-inflation detection

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

The system monitors the pressures in the four tyres, once the vehicle is moving.
It compares the information given by the four wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.
The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

! The under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous condition (high loading, high speed, long journey).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

! The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
See the "Identification markings" section.
Tyre pressures should be checked when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise (when hot), add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Under-inflation alert



This is given by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment),

or

- ☞ if you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold,

or

- ☞ if it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

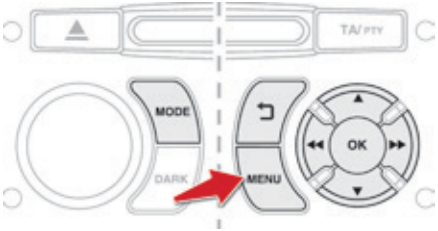
i The alert is maintained until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

It is necessary to reinitialise the system every time one or more tyre pressures are adjusted, and after changing one or more wheels.

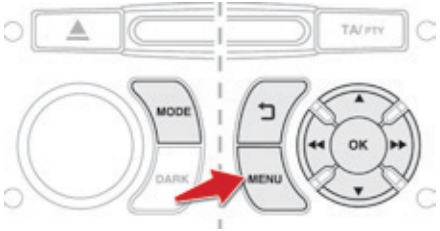
! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the use of the vehicle and in line with the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.
The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.
The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Reinitialisation of the system must be done with the **ignition on** and the vehicle stationary:
- in the vehicle configuration menu for vehicle fitted with a display screen,
- using the button on the dashboard, for vehicles without display screen.



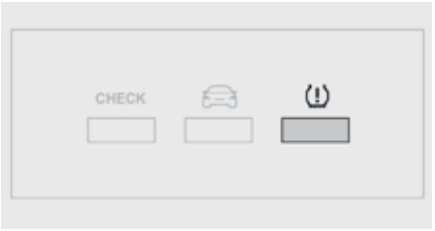
Monochrome screen A

- Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the menu **Veh config**, then confirm by pressing the button **OK**.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "**Reinit inflat**", menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
  A message is displayed to confirm the instruction.
- Confirm by pressing the **OK** button.



Monochrome screen C

- Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "**Define vehicle parameters**" menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "**Tyre pressures**" menu, then the "**Reinitialisation**" menu, then confirming by pressing the **OK** button.
  A message confirms the reinitialisation.



Touch screen tablet

- Press the **MENU** button.
- Select the "**Driving**" menu.
- In the secondary page, select "**Under-inflation initialisation**".

A message is displayed to confirm the reinitialisation instruction.
- Select "**Yes**" or "**No**", then confirm.
  A message confirms the reinitialisation.

The new pressure settings registered are considered to be reference values by the system.



Dashboard button

☞ Make a long press on this button.

An audible signal confirms the reinitialisation.

Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Operating fault

SERVICE

The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

Touch screen tablet

This system gives access to:
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio and display configuration menus,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
- the display of alert messages,
- the display of ambient temperature (a blue snow flake appears when there is a risk of ice),
- the display of the trip computer.

And, depending on equipment, it allows:
- the display of visual parking sensors information,
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.

! As a safety measure, some functions can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary. When the vehicle moves off, their display is interrupted.

General operation

Recommendations

It is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through lists, moving the map...).
A light wipe is not enough.
The screen does not recognise pressing with more than one finger.
This technology allows use at all temperatures and when wearing gloves.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen tablet.
Do not touch the touch screen tablet with wet hands.
Uses a soft clean cloth to clean it.

Principles

Press the "**MENU**" button for access to the different menus, then press the virtual buttons. Each menu is displayed over one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



Use this button to go to the secondary page.



Use this button to return to the primary page.

i After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.



Use this button for access to additional information and to the settings for certain functions.



Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to quit.

Menus

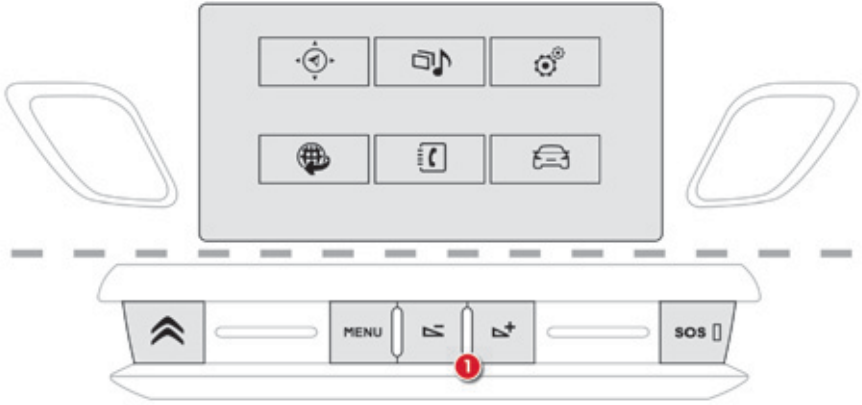
MENU Press this button, then choose the desired menu.

Navigation
Navigation is available depending on country and/or trim level.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Radio Media
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Settings
Allows configuration of the display and the system.
Refer to the corresponding section.

Connected services.
(Depending on equipment).
Allows you to run some of your smartphone's applications via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.



Telephone
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Driving
Allows access to the trip computer and, depending on version, the adjustment of settings for certain functions.
Refer to the corresponding section.

1. Volume / mute.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Under-inflation detection

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

The system monitors the pressures in the four tyres, once the vehicle is moving.
It compares the information given by the four wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.
The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

! The under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous condition (high loading, high speed, long journey).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

! The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
See the "Identification markings" section.
Tyre pressures should be checked when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise (when hot), add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Under-inflation alert



This is given by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment),

or

- ☞ if you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold,

or

- ☞ if it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

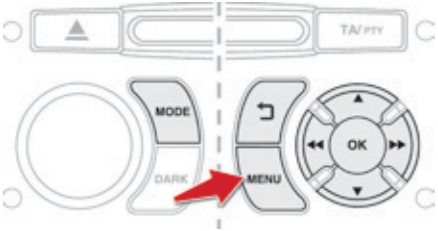
i The alert is maintained until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

It is necessary to reinitialise the system every time one or more tyre pressures are adjusted, and after changing one or more wheels.

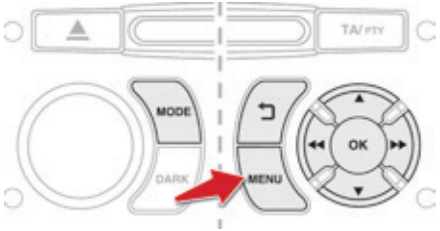
! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the use of the vehicle and in line with the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.
The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.
The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Reinitialisation of the system must be done with the **ignition on** and the vehicle stationary:
- in the vehicle configuration menu for vehicle fitted with a display screen,
- using the button on the dashboard, for vehicles without display screen.



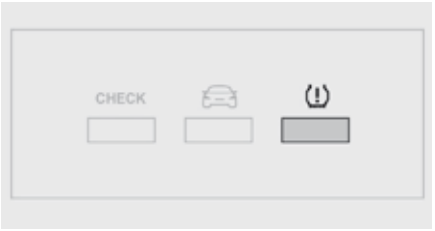
Monochrome screen A

- Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the menu **Veh config**, then confirm by pressing the button **OK**.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "**Reinit inflat**", menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
  A message is displayed to confirm the instruction.
- Confirm by pressing the **OK** button.



Monochrome screen C

- Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "**Define vehicle parameters**" menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "**Tyre pressures**" menu, then the "**Reinitialisation**" menu, then confirming by pressing the **OK** button.
  A message confirms the reinitialisation.



Touch screen tablet

- Press the **MENU** button.
- Select the "**Driving**" menu.
- In the secondary page, select "**Under-inflation initialisation**".

A message is displayed to confirm the reinitialisation instruction.
- Select "**Yes**" or "**No**", then confirm.
  A message confirms the reinitialisation.

The new pressure settings registered are considered to be reference values by the system.



Dashboard button

☞ Make a long press on this button.

An audible signal confirms the reinitialisation.

Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Operating fault

SERVICE

The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

E5
E10

Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

i The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

B7

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



B10

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20
B30

The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel fuel at low temperature

In temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in the summer diesel fuels may result in abnormal operation of the fuel supply system. To avoid this, the use of winter diesel fuels is recommended, keeping the tank topped up to more than 50% of its capacity.
If in spite of this you experience difficulties starting the engine in temperatures below -15°C (+5°F), simply leave the vehicle in a garage or a heated workshop for a while.

i **Travelling abroad**

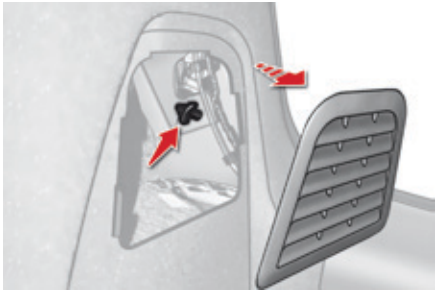
Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name...) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact your dealer.

Rear lamps



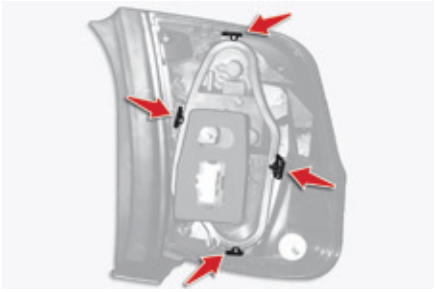
1. **Brake / sidelamps (P21/5W).**
2. **Direction indicators (PY21W amber).**
3. **Foglamp, right-hand side (PR21W red)**
   Reversing lamp, left-hand side (P21W).

The location of the reversing lamp or foglamp may vary depending on the side on which the rear lamp is positioned (left or right).
Amber or red bulbs, such as those for the direction indicators and rear foglamp, must be replaced by bulbs of the same rating and colour.
The lamps on the tailgate are dummy units. They are there for aesthetic purposes only.



Changing bulbs

- Open the boot,
- remove the access flap from the corresponding side trim panel,
- unscrew the butterfly nut securing the lamp unit,
- unclip the lamp unit connector,
- from the outside, extract the lamp unit carefully pulling it in the centreline of the vehicle,



- spread the four tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.
Take care to engage the lamp unit in its guides, while keeping it in line with the vehicle.

Refitting the access flap



Position the three hooks **A** of the flap at the bottom.



Slide the flap to position it correctly.



Tilt the flap upwards and position the hooks **B** under the boot trim.
Raise the flap.

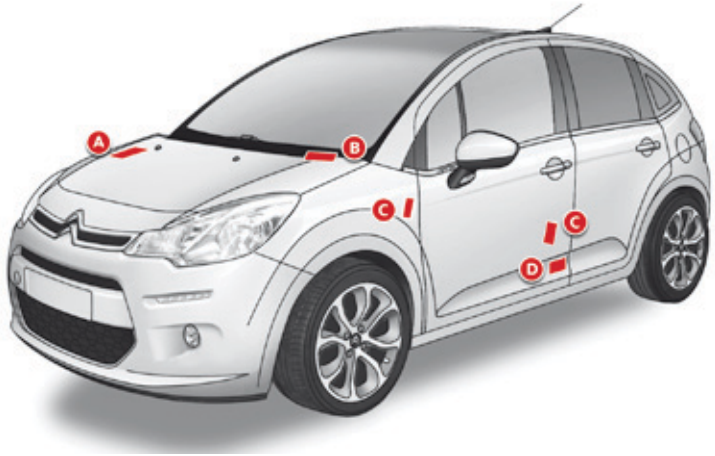
Changing the number plate lamp bulbs (W5W)



- Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the outer holes of the lens.
- Push it outwards to unclip.
- Remove the lens.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle identification number (VIN) under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the bodywork near the passenger compartment filter.

B. Vehicle identification number on the bottom edge of the windscreen aperture.
This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
The self-destroying label on the left-hand or right-hand centre pillar carries the following information.

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European type approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the gross vehicle weight,
- the gross train weight,
- the maximum front axle weight,
- the maximum rear axle weight.

D. Tyre/paint label.
This label on the left centre pillar, driver's side, carries the following information:

- the tyre pressures, for unladen and laden conditions,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating of the tyre),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

Emergency or assistance call





Localised Emergency Call

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call"* centre.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call.
The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

Localised Emergency Call immediately locates your vehicle, makes contact with you in your language** and - if necessary - organises sending of the appropriate emergency services**. In countries where the service is not operational, or if the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is directed straight to the emergency services (112) without location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the CITROËN Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

* Depending on the terms and conditions for the service, available from dealers, and technological and technical limits.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

If the orange indicator lamp is on fixed: the back-up battery should be replaced.
In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand's dealer network, we suggest that you have a dealer check and, if desired, modify the configuration of these services.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

7-inch touch screen tablet

GPS satellite navigation - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	10
Steering mounted controls	12
Menus	13
Navigation	14
Navigation - Guidance	22
Traffic	26
Radio Media	28
Radio	34
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	36
Media	38
Settings	40
Connected services	48
MirrorLink™	48
CarPlay®	52
Telephone	54
Frequently asked questions	62

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

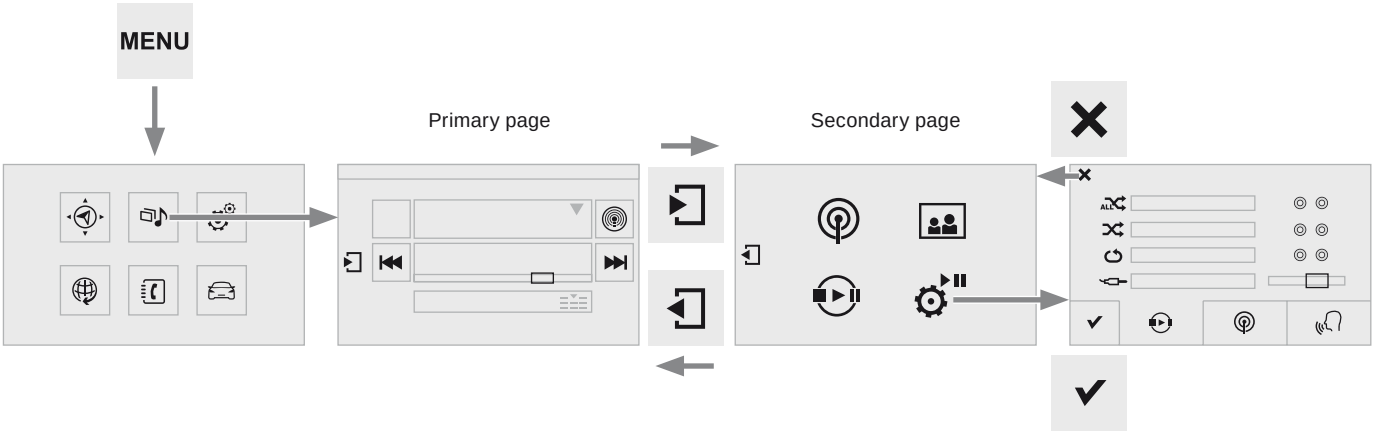
As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. The display of an energy economy mode message signals that electrical systems operating are going into standby.
Refer to the energy economy mode section.

First steps

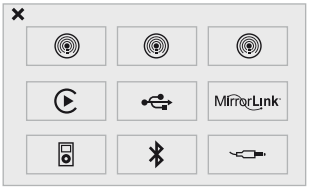
Use the buttons arranged below the touch screen tablet for access to the menu carousel, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.
Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.

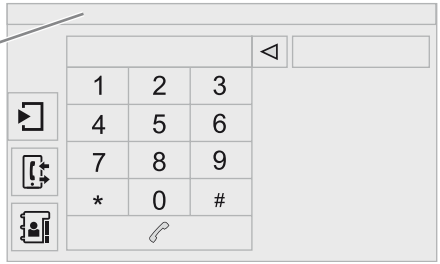


Short-cuts: using the touch buttons in the upper band of the touch screen tablet, it is possible to go directly to the selection of the audio source or the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- "FM" / "DAB"* / "AM"* stations.
- "USB" memory stick.
- Smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth®* and Bluetooth® audio streaming*.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).



MENU Press **Menu** to display the menu carousel.

Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).

Increase volume.

Reduce volume.

Mute the sound by pressing simultaneously on the volume increase and reduce buttons.
Unmute the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

In very high temperatures, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map...). A simple wipe will not be enough. Pressing with more than one finger is not recognised.
The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.

To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) without any additional product.
Do not use pointed objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls





Radio: select the previous/next preset station.
Media: select a genre / artist / folder from the list.
Select the previous/next entry in a menu.



Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.
Media: Select next track.
Media, press and hold: fast forward.
Jump in the list.



Change the audio source.
Confirm a selection.
Call/end call on the telephone.
Press for more than 2 seconds: access to the telephone menu.



Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.
Media: select previous track.
Media, press and hold: fast back.
Jump in the list.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute: cut the sound by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Menus

Navigation

(Depending on equipment)



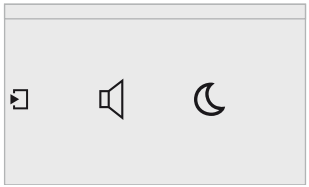
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

Radio Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

Settings



Adjust the settings for sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

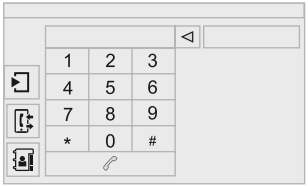
Connected services

(Depending on equipment)



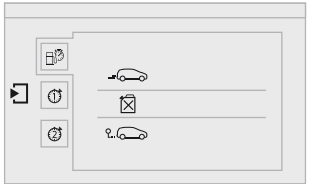
Operate certain applications on your smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Telephone



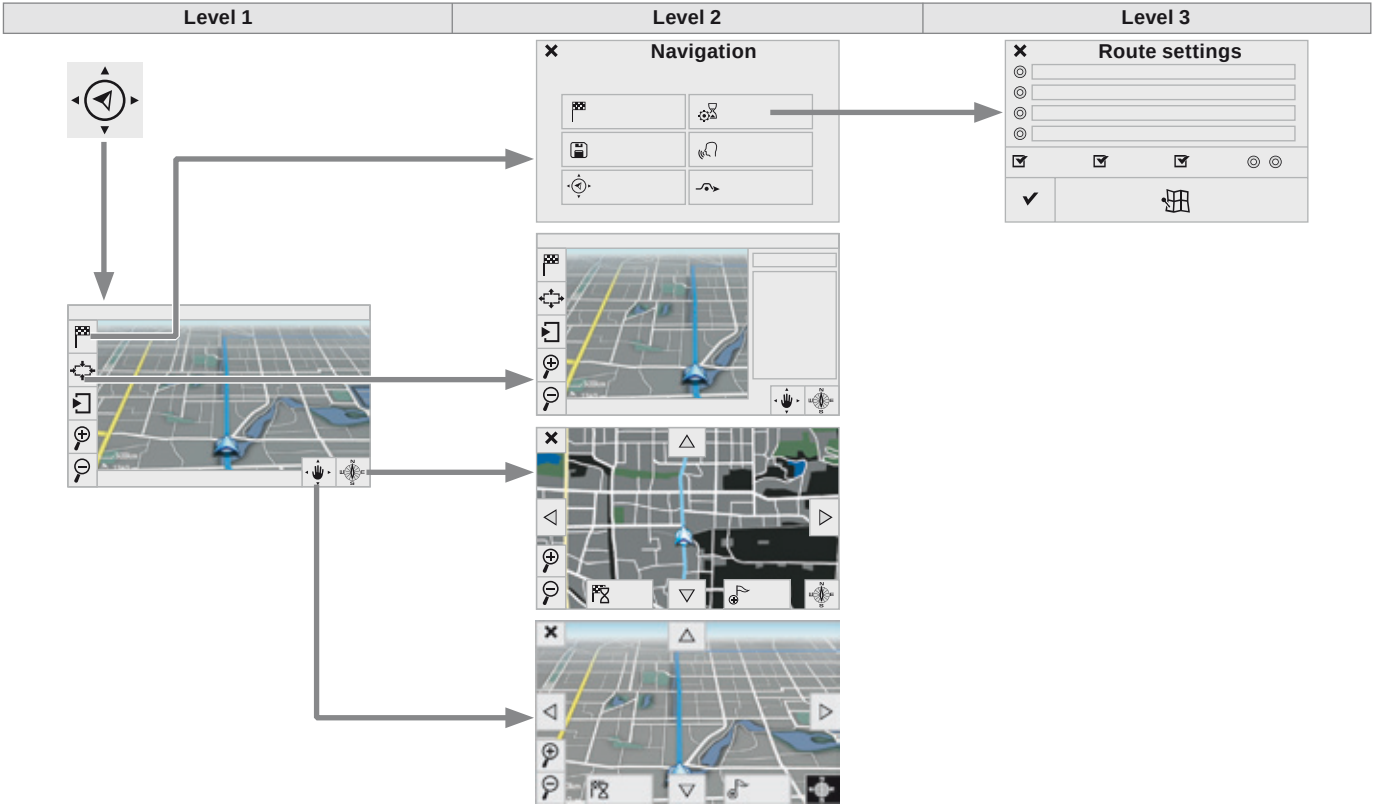
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.
Access to the CarPlay® function after connection of your smartphone by USB cable.

Driving



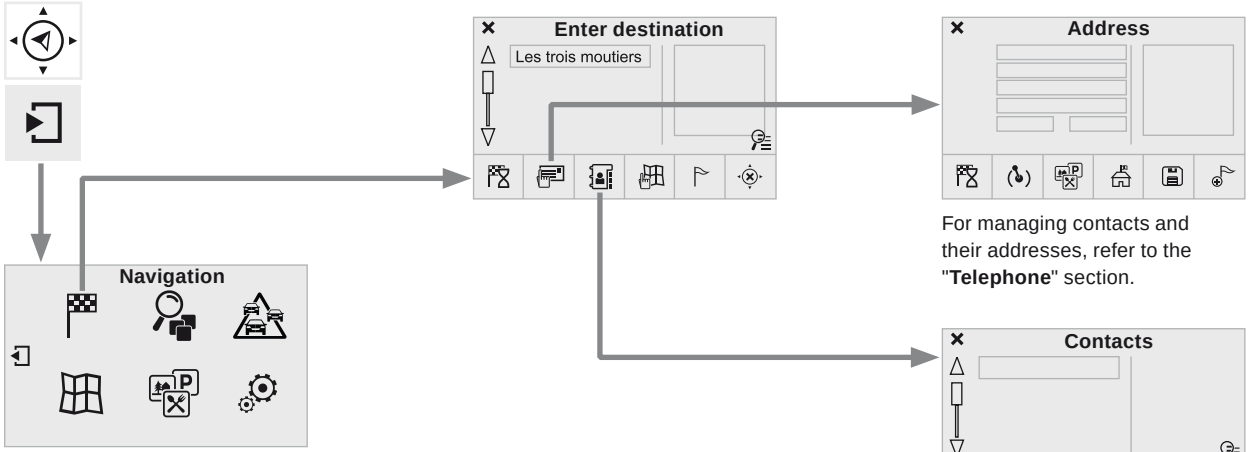
Access to the trip computer.
Activate, deactivate or enter settings for certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation ↓ Settings Navigation		Enter destination			Display recent destinations
			Route settings		Fastest	Choose the navigation criteria. The map displays the route chosen according to these criteria.
					Shortest	
					Time/distance	
					Ecological	
					Tolls	
					Ferries	
					Traffic	
					Strict-Close	
					Show route on map	Display the map and start navigation.
					Confirm	Save the options.
			Save current location			Save the current address.
			Stop navigation			Delete the navigation information.
			Voice synthesis			Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names.
			Diversion			Detour from your initial route by a determined distance.
	Navigation					Display in text mode
						Zoom in.
						Zoom out.
						Display in full screen mode. Use the arrows to move the map.
						Switch to 2D map.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

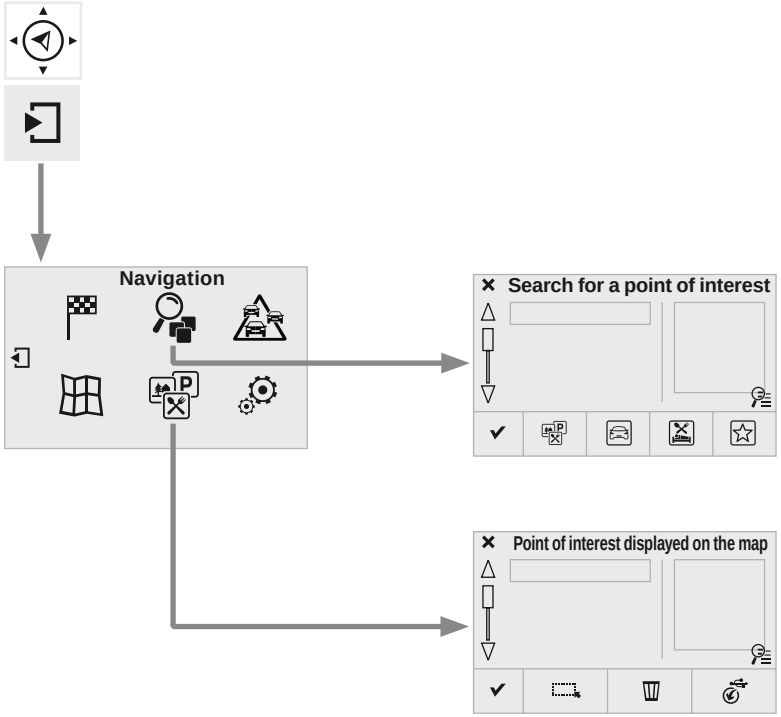


For managing contacts and their addresses, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

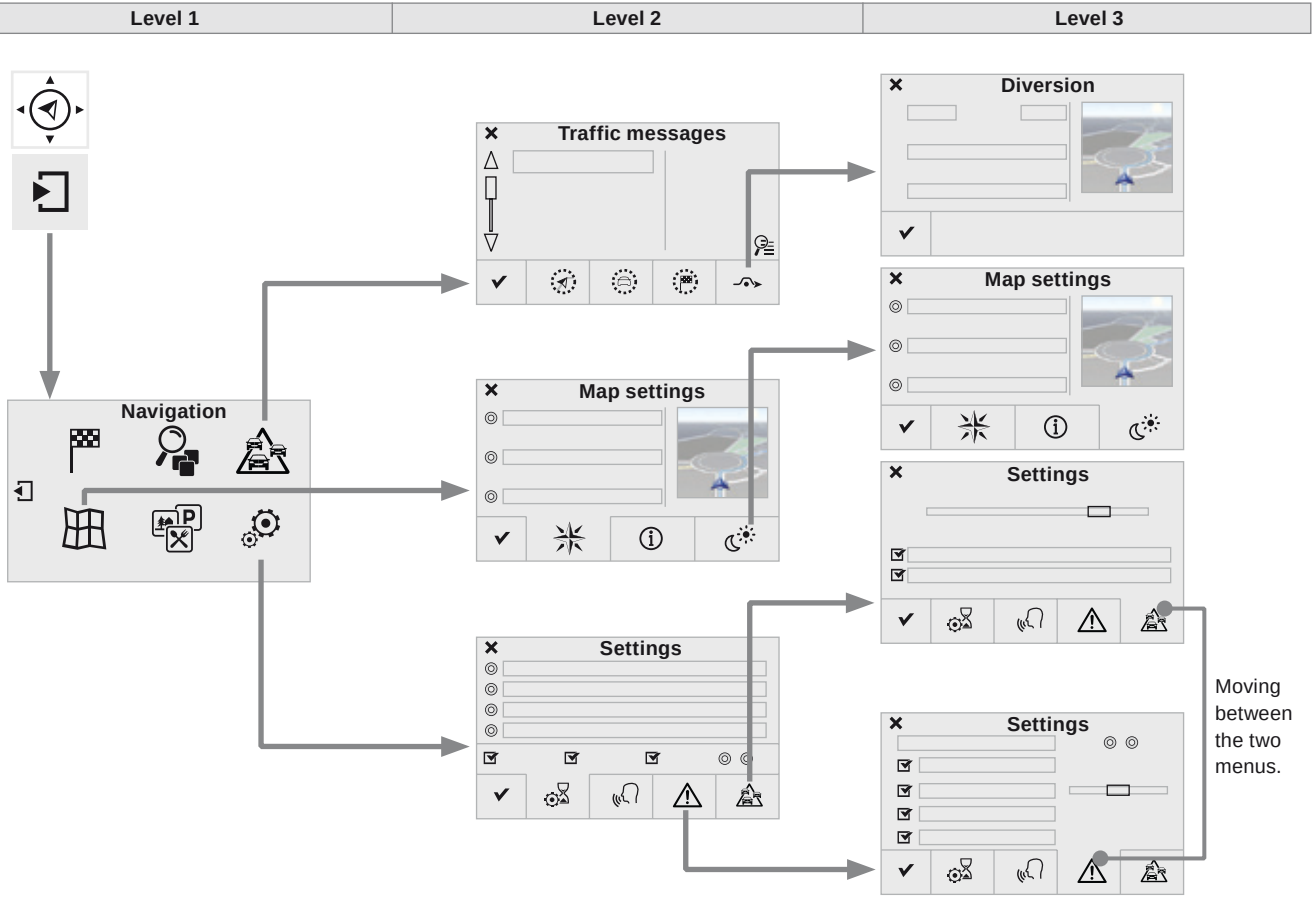
To use the telephone functions, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation Secondary page Enter destination		**Address**		Current loc.	Address settings
					Point of interest	
					Town center	
					Save	Save the current address.
					Add waypoint	Add a waypoint to the route.
					Navigate to	Press to calculate the route.
			Contacts		Addresses	Select a contact then calculate the route.
					View	
					Navigate to	
					Search for contact	
					Call	
			On the map			Display the map and zoom to view the roads.
			Itinerary			Create, add or delete a waypoint or view the itinerary.
			Stop			Delete navigation information.
			Navigate to			Press to calculate the route.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
  	**Navigation** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Search for POI**		**All POIs**		List of categories available. After choosing the category, select the points of interest.
			**Motor**		
			**Dining/hotels**		
			**Personal**		
		✔	**Search**		Save the settings.
  	**Navigation** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Show POIs**		**Select all**		Choose the display settings for POIs.
			**Delete**		
			**Import POIs**		
		✔	**Confirm**		Save the options.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Navigation
Traffic messages
Map settings
Settings
Diversion
Map settings
Settings
Settings
Moving between the two menus.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Navigation → Secondary page → Traffic messages	On the route		Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.
	Around vehicle		
	Near destination		
	Detour	◎ Detour over a distance	
		◎ Recalculate route	
	✔ Finish		Save your selections.
Navigation → Secondary page → Map settings	Orientation	◎ Flat view north heading	Choose the display and orientation of the map.
		◎ Flat view vehicle heading	
		◎ Perspective view	
	Maps		
	Aspect	◎ "Day" map colour	
		◎ "Night" map colour	
		◎ Auomatic day/night	
	✔ Confirm		Save the settings.
Navigation → Secondary page → Settings	Route settings		Enter settings and choose the volume for the voice and announcement of street names.
	Voice		
	Alarm!		
	Traffic options		
	✔ Confirm		Save your selections.

Navigation - Guidance

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Select the **"Country:"** from the list offered, then in the same way the "**City:**" or its post code, the "**Road:**", the "**N°:**".
Confirm each time.



Select "**Save**" to save the address entered as a contact entry.
The system allows up to 200 entries.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Choose the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**" or "**Shortest**" or "**Time/ distance**" or "**Ecological**".



Choose the restriction criteria: "**Tolls**", "**Ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".



Select "**Confirm**".

Or



Press on "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.



To delete navigation information, press on "**Settings**".



Press on "**Stop navigation**".



To resume navigation press on "**Settings**".



Press on "**Resume guidance**".

Towards a recent destination

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".



Select an address from the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a contact

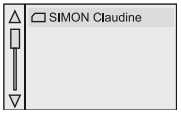
To be able to use navigation "towards a contact in the directory", it is first necessary to enter the address for your contact.

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

Select "**Contacts**".



Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start navigation.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



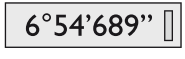
Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Enter the "**Longitude:**" then the "**Latitude:**".



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a point on the map



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**On the map**".

Zooming in on the map shows points with information.

A long press on a point opens its content.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Search for POI**".



Select "**All POIs**",

Or



"**Motor**",

Or



"**Dining/hotels**".

An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.
The detailed procedure is available on: http://citroen.navigation.com.

Risk areas / Danger zone alert settings



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Alarm!**" (Alert).

It is then possible to activate Risk areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk areas alert to be defined.



Select "**Confirm**".

! This series of alerts and displays is only available if Risk areas have first been downloaded and installed on the system.

Traffic

Traffic information

Display of messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Traffic messages**".

Choose filter settings for:



"**On the route**",

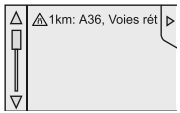


"**Around**",



"**Near destination**", filters to fine-tune the list of messages.

Press again to remove the filter.



Select the message from the list offered.

Select the magnifying glass to have voice information.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

Setting filters

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Traffic options**".

Select:
- "**Be advised of new messages**",
- "**Speak messages**".

Then enter the filter radius.

Select "**Confirm**".

We recommend a filter radius of:
- 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
- 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

Receiving TA messages

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

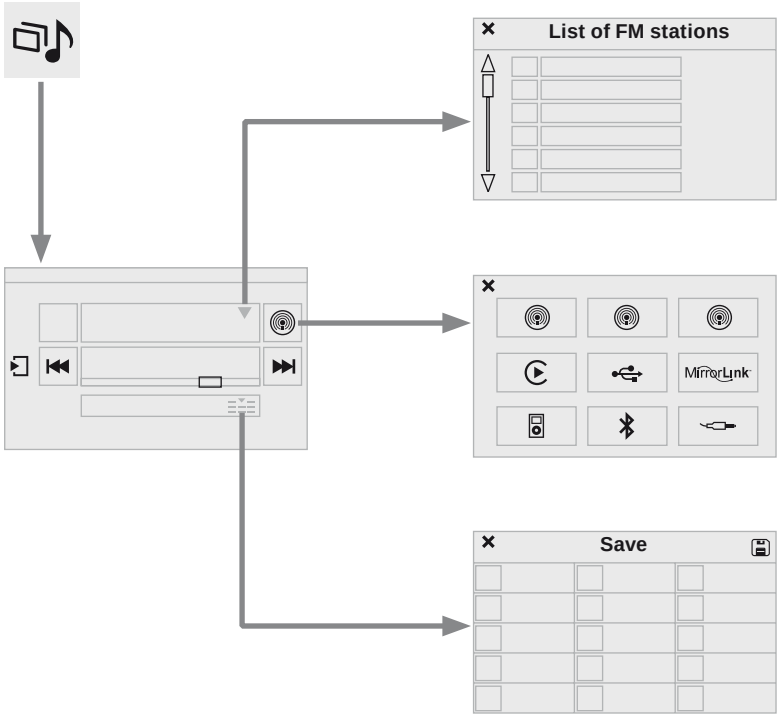
Select "**Voice**".

Off On Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".

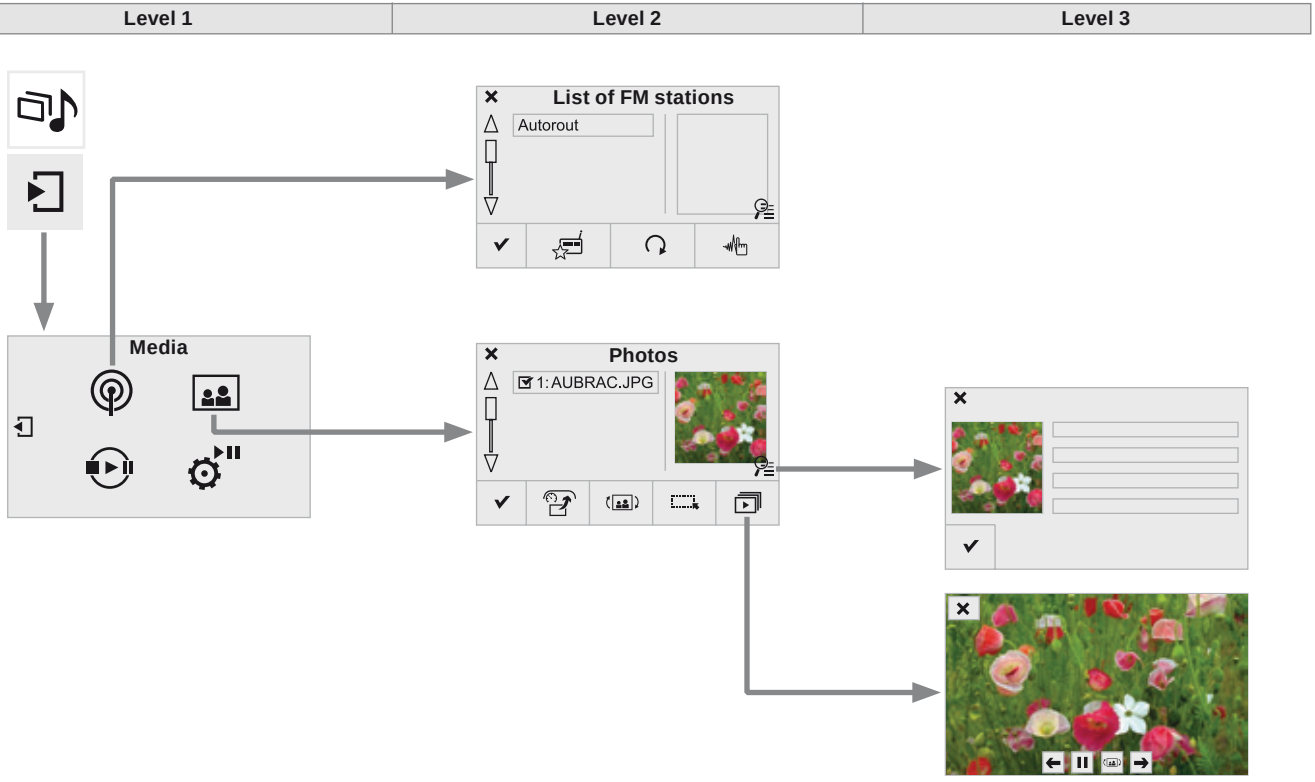
The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

Radio Media

Level 1	Level 2

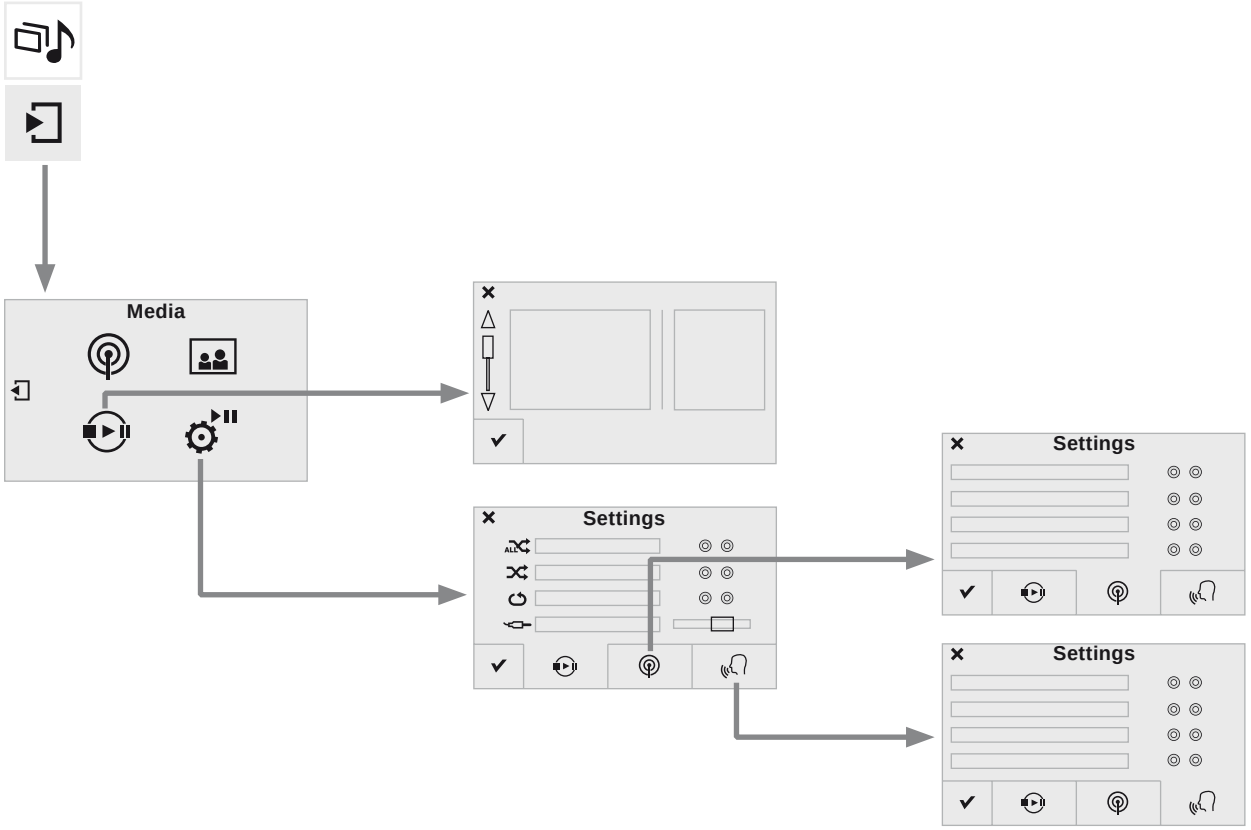


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Radio Media ↓ **List**	▼	**List of FM stations**	Press on a radio station to select it.
	Radio Media ↓ **Source**	Radio FM	**FM Radio**	Select change of source.
		Radio DAB	**DAB Radio**	
		Radio AM	**AM Radio**	
			USB	
		MirrorLink	**MirrorLink**	
			CarPlay	
			iPod	
			Bluetooth	
			AUX	
	Radio Media ↓ **Save (preset)**			Press an empty location to Save it.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
List of FM stations
Autorout
Media
Photos
1: AUBRAC.JPG

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Radio Media → Secondary page → Radio list	**Save**		Press a radio station to select it.
	Update list		Update the list of stations received.
	Frequency		Enter the desired radio frequency.
	✔ **Confirm**		Save the settings.
Radio Media → Secondary page → Photos	**Home screen**		Display the selected photo in the home page.
	Rotate		Rotate the photo 90°.
	Select all		Select all the photos in the list. Press again to deselect.
	Slideshow	← Previous photo.	Display the photos in sequence, full-screen. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .bmp, .png.
		⏸ ▷ Pause / Play.	
		→ Next photo.	
	✔ **Full screen**		Display the selected photo full-screen.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Radio Media ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Media list**					Presentation of the last media used.
	Radio Media ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Settings**		**Media** ↓ **Settings**	ALL	Shuffle (all tracks)	Choose the play settings.
					Shuffle (current album)	
					Repeat	
					Aux. amplification	
			Radio ↓ **Settings**		RDS options	Activate or deactivate the settings.
					DAB/FM station tracking	
					Display Radio Text	
					Digital radio slideshow display	
			Announcements ↓ **Settings**		Traffic announcements (TA)	Activate or deactivate the settings.
					News - Weather	
					Sport - Programm info	
					Flash - Unforeseen events	
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

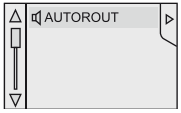
Select "**List**" in the primary page.

Or

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.



Select a radio station from the list offered.

Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.

To select a preset radio station.

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Save**".



Select a preset radio station in the list.

If necessary, select change of source.



Select "**FM Radio**".



Or

"**AM Radio**".



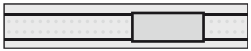
! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing a radio frequency

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



By automatic frequency search



Press ◂ or ▸ to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.

THEN



Select change source.



Select "**FM Radio**".

Or



"**AM Radio**".

OR



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Press on **Frequency**.

THEN



Enter the frequency in full (e.g.: 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then "**Confirm**".

FRANCE BLEU

Changing radio station

Pressing the name of the current radio station brings up a list.

To change radio station press the name of the desired station.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).



Press on "**Save**" (preset).

Mémoire 1

Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.

A long press on a number saves (presets) the station.

Or



A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.

Recalling preset stations



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**Save**" (preset).

Activating / Deactivating RDS



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



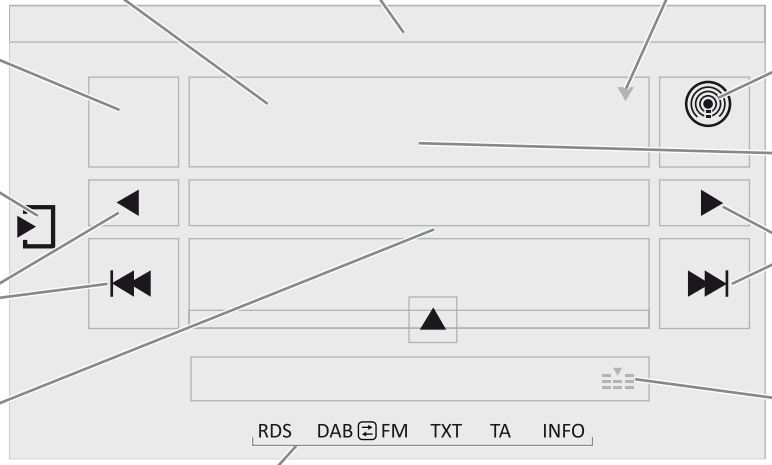
Select "**Radio**".



Activate/deactivate "**RDS options**".

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio



Display of the name of the current station.

Short-cut: access to the choice of audio source and the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).

Select the radio station.

Any thumbnail broadcast by the station.

Select the audio source. Display the "DAB" band.

Secondary page.

Display of "Radiotext" for the current station.

Next "Multiplex". Next radio station.

Previous "Multiplex". Previous radio station.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 15. Short press: select the preset radio station. Long press: preset a radio station.

Display the name and number of the "multiplex" service being used.

Display of options:
if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,
if active and available, the display will be blank.

If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.

Journaline® is a text-based information service designed for digital radio systems.
It provides text-based information structured around topics and sub-topics.
This service is available from the "LIST OF DAB STATIONS" page.

Digital radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page.
The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Select "**DAB Radio**".



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

or
Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

Select the radio station from the list offered.

DAB / FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB/FM station tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Radio**".



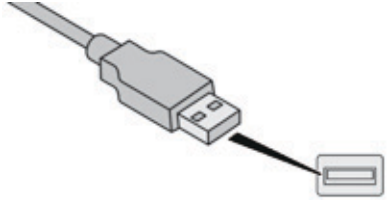
Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then "**Confirm**".

If "DAB/FM station tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM station tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or on connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



This source is only available if the "Auxiliary socket" option has been activated in the "Media" settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

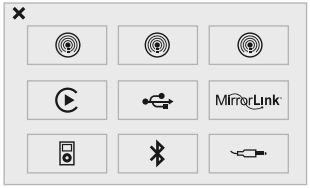
First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

Selection of source

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

FM

Select change of source.



Choose the source.

SRC

The steering mounted **SRC** (source) button can be used to go to the next media source, available if the source is active.

Information and advice

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

! The system supports USB mass storage portable players, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripheral devices, not recognised by the system on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (file allocation table).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i It is recommended that the USB cable for the portable device is used.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

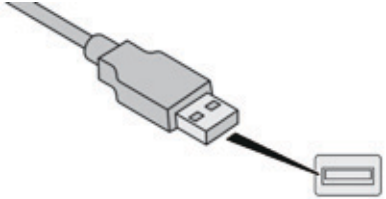
Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section, then "**Bluetooth**".
Choose the "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth® peripheral.

Connecting Apple® players



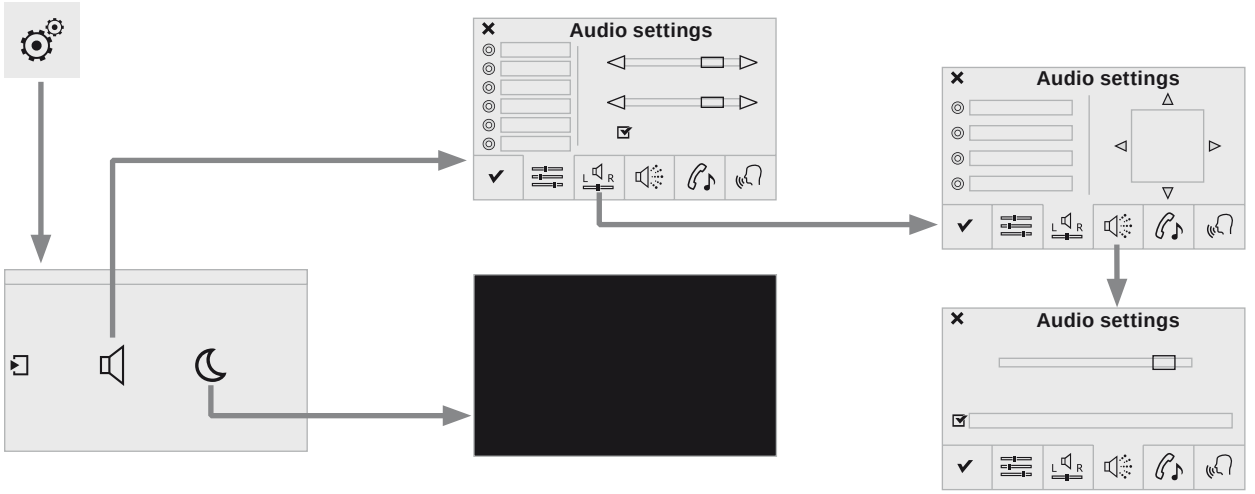
Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

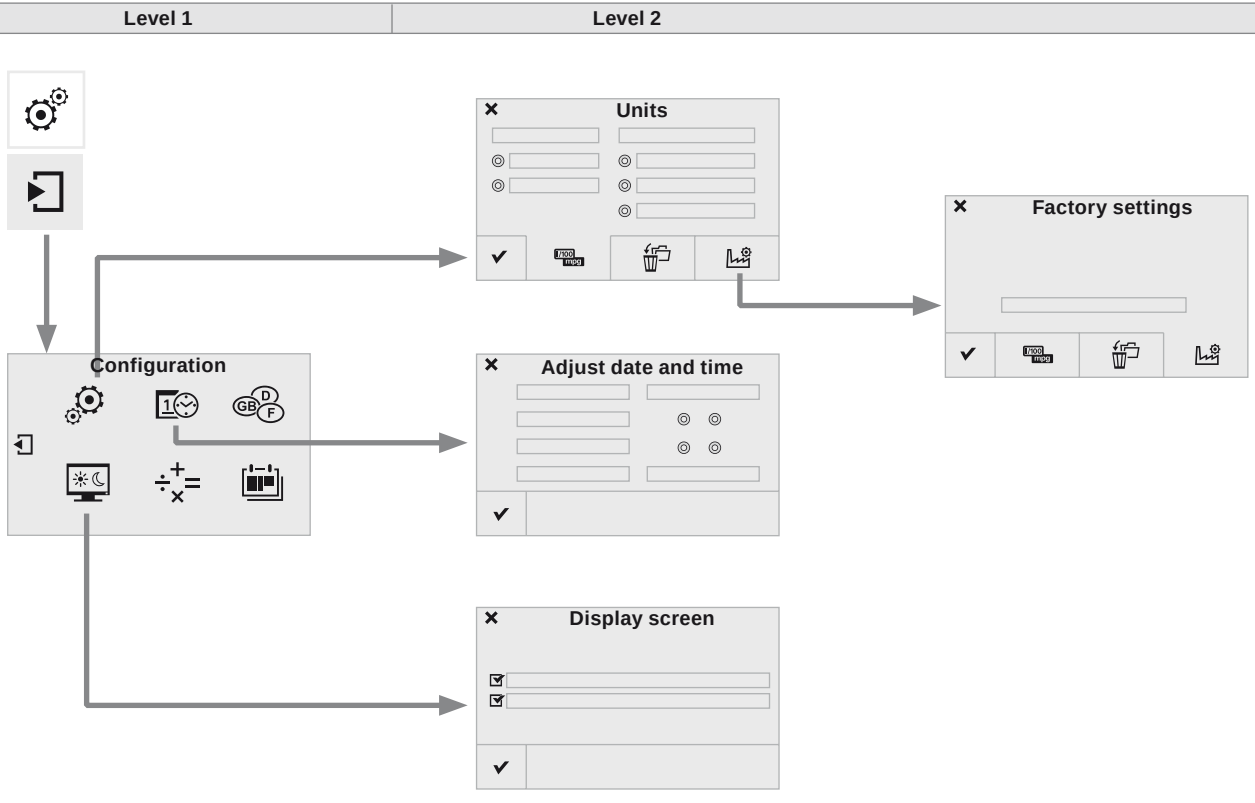
The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Settings

Level 1	Level 2

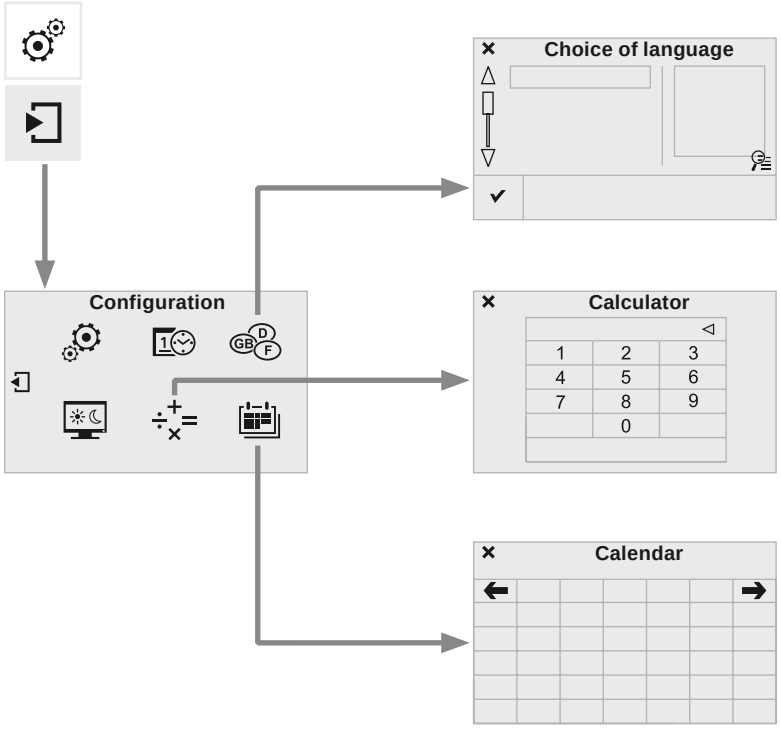


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	**Settings** ↓ **Audio settings**		**Ambience**	Choose the sound ambience.
			**Balance**	Sound distribution using the Arkamys® system.
			**Sound effects**	Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.
			**Ringtones**	Set the telephone ringtone and volume.
			**Voice**	Set the volume and voice for speaking street names.
		✔	**Confirm**	Save your settings.
	**Settings** ↓ **Turn off screen**			Function that turns off the display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.


Level 1
Level 2
Configuration
Units
Factory settings
Adjust date and time
Display screen

Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings → Secondary page → System Settings		**Units**	Set the units used to display distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
			Delete data	Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.
			Factory settings	Return to factory settings.
		✔	**Confirm**	Save the settings.
	Settings → Secondary page → Time/Date	✔	**Confirm**	Set the date and time then confirm.
	Settings → Secondary page → Screen settings		**Activate automatic text scrolling**	Activate or deactivate the setting then confirm.
			Activate animations	
		✔	**Confirm**	

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Languages**	✔	**Confirm**	Select the language then confirm.
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Calculator**			Select the calculator.
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Calendar**			Select the calendar.

Audio settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".



Select "**Ambience**"

Or



"**Balance**"

Or



"**Sound effects**"

Or



"**Ringtones**"

Or



"**Voice**".

! The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.

! The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass:**, **Treble:** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.
The settings for **Distribution** and **Balance** are common to all sources.

!
- "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass:**"
- "**Treble:**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**", "**Front only**")
- "**Audible response from touch screen**"
- "**Volume linked to speed**" (Activate/Deactivate)

i On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the passenger compartment.

Modifying system settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**System Settings**".



Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.



Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the list.



Choose the item then select "**Delete**".



Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Screen settings**".



Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**".



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page



Select "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, synchronisation with GPS, the time and its format, then the date.

The system does not manage changes between summer time and winter time automatically (according to country).



Select "**Languages**" to change language.

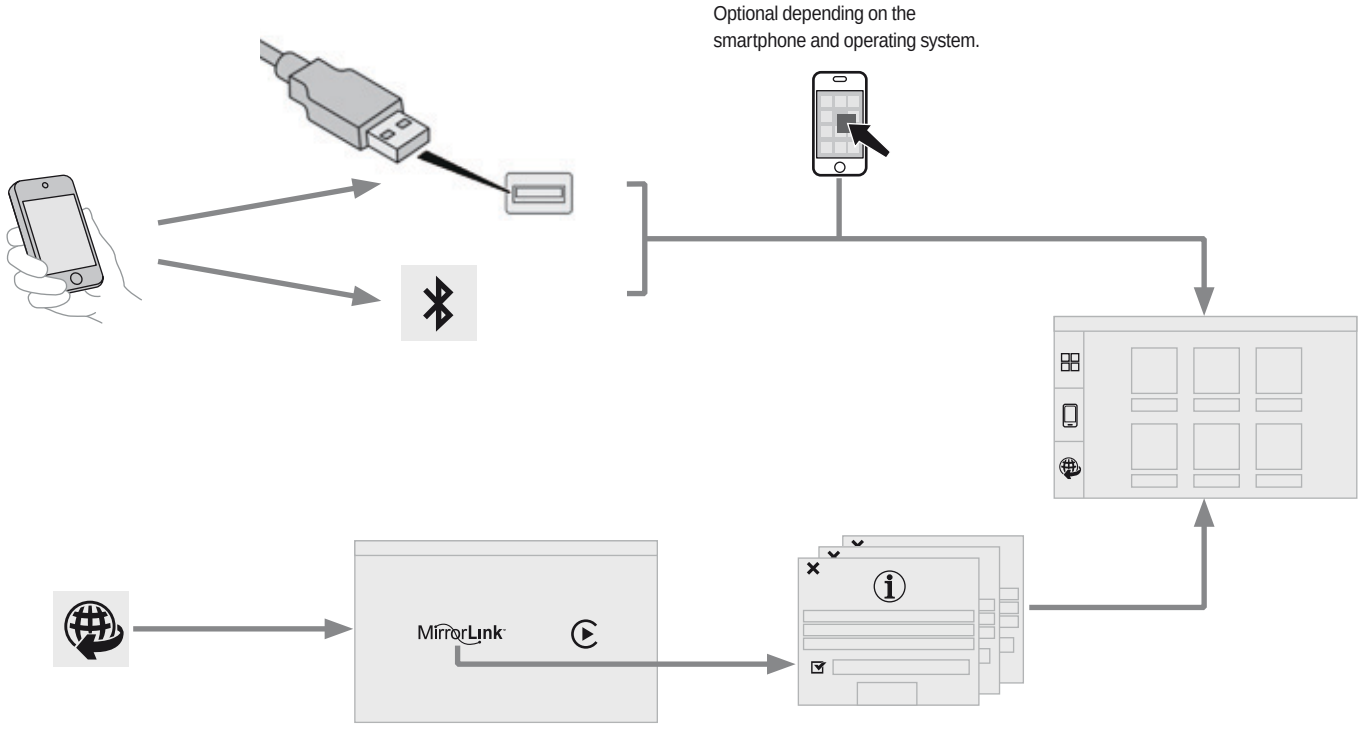


Select "**Calculator**" to display a calculator.



Select "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.

Connected services
MirrorLink™



MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

Please note:
- if your smartphone is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press on "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.

Press on "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Start the application on the smartphone (optional, depending on the smartphone and operating system).

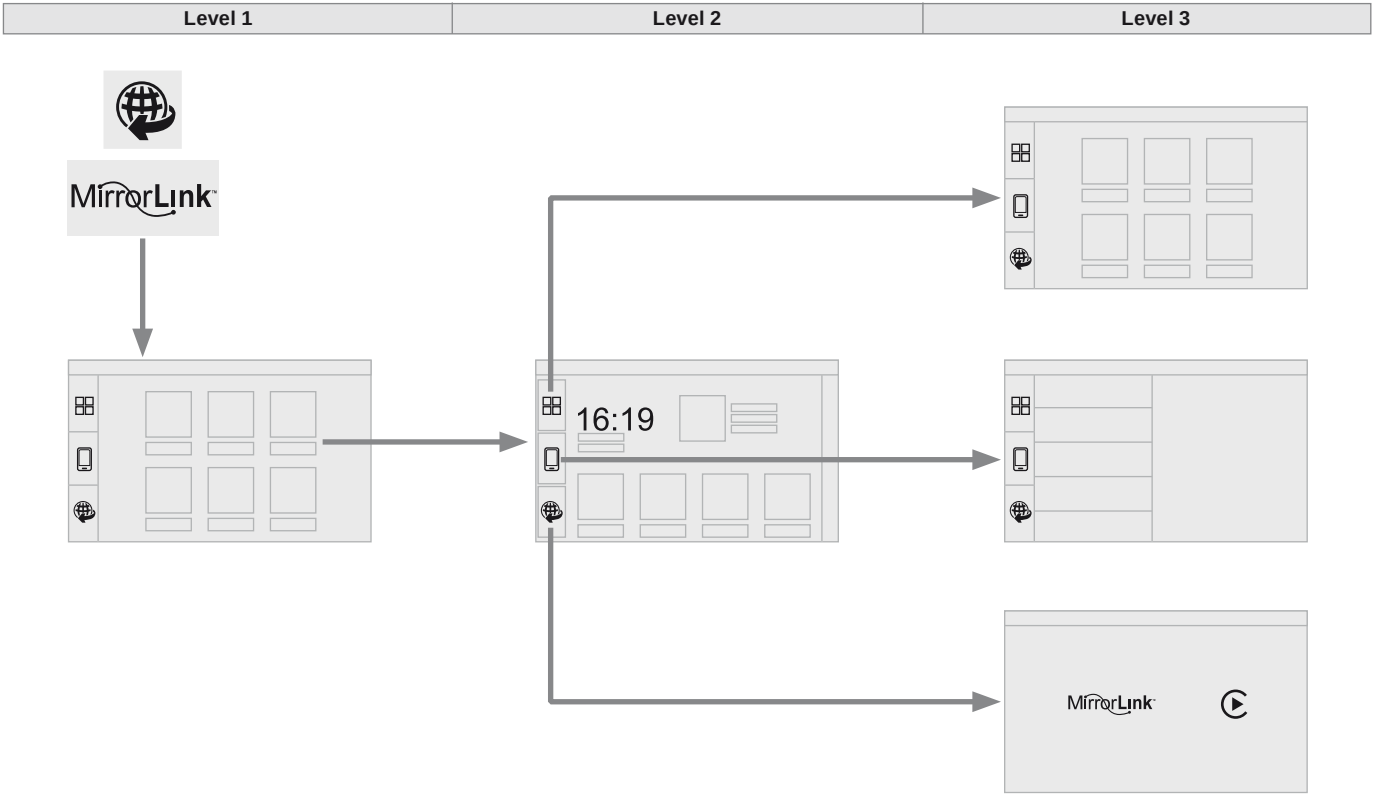
OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

Once connection is established, an page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
If only one application has been downloaded to the smartphone, it starts automatically.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

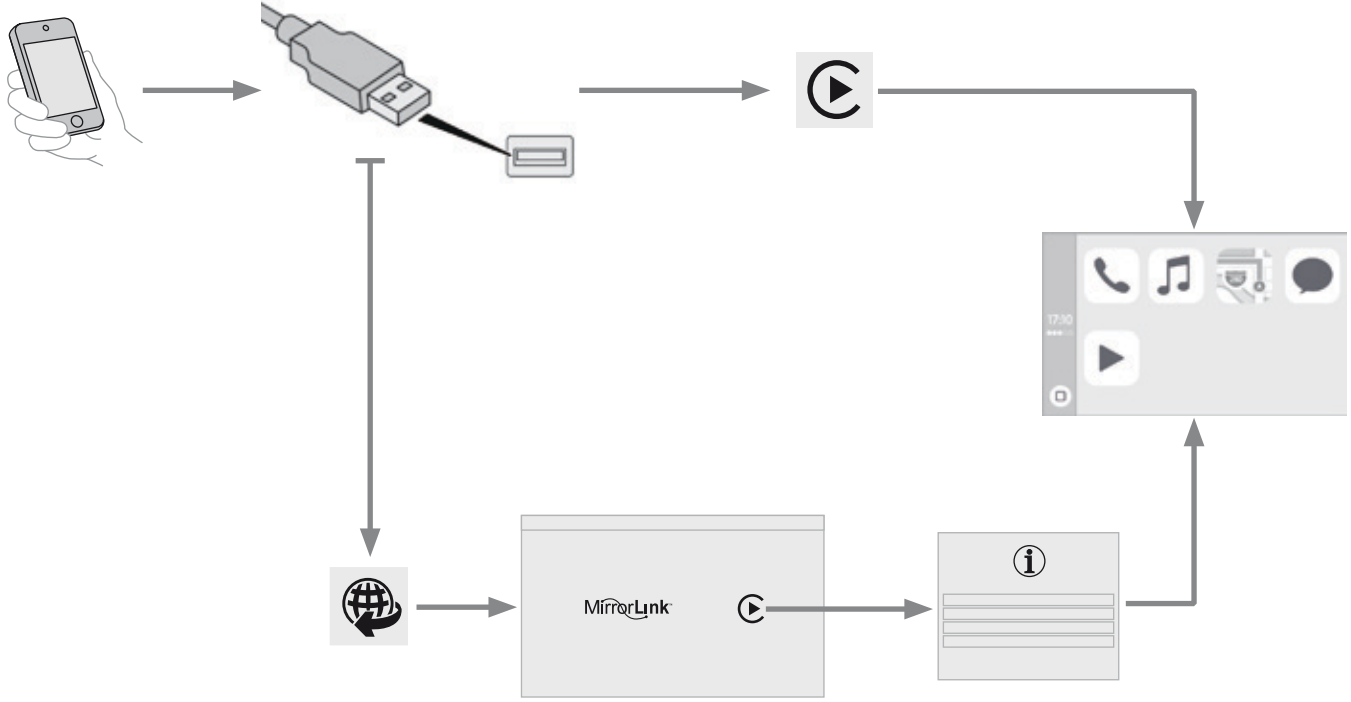
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.
Voice recognition requires a compatible smartphone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth®.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
MirrorLink
16:19
MirrorLink

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Connected services ↓ MirrorLink™					Access or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
 MirrorLink						Access to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": access or return to the "Car mode" page.
						Access to the "Connected services" primary page.

CarPlay®



CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed on the vehicle's screen.
As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

i As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



On connecting the USB cable, the "**Telephone**" function changes to "**CarPlay**" in the menu carousel.
Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone is charged while connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press on "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.



Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

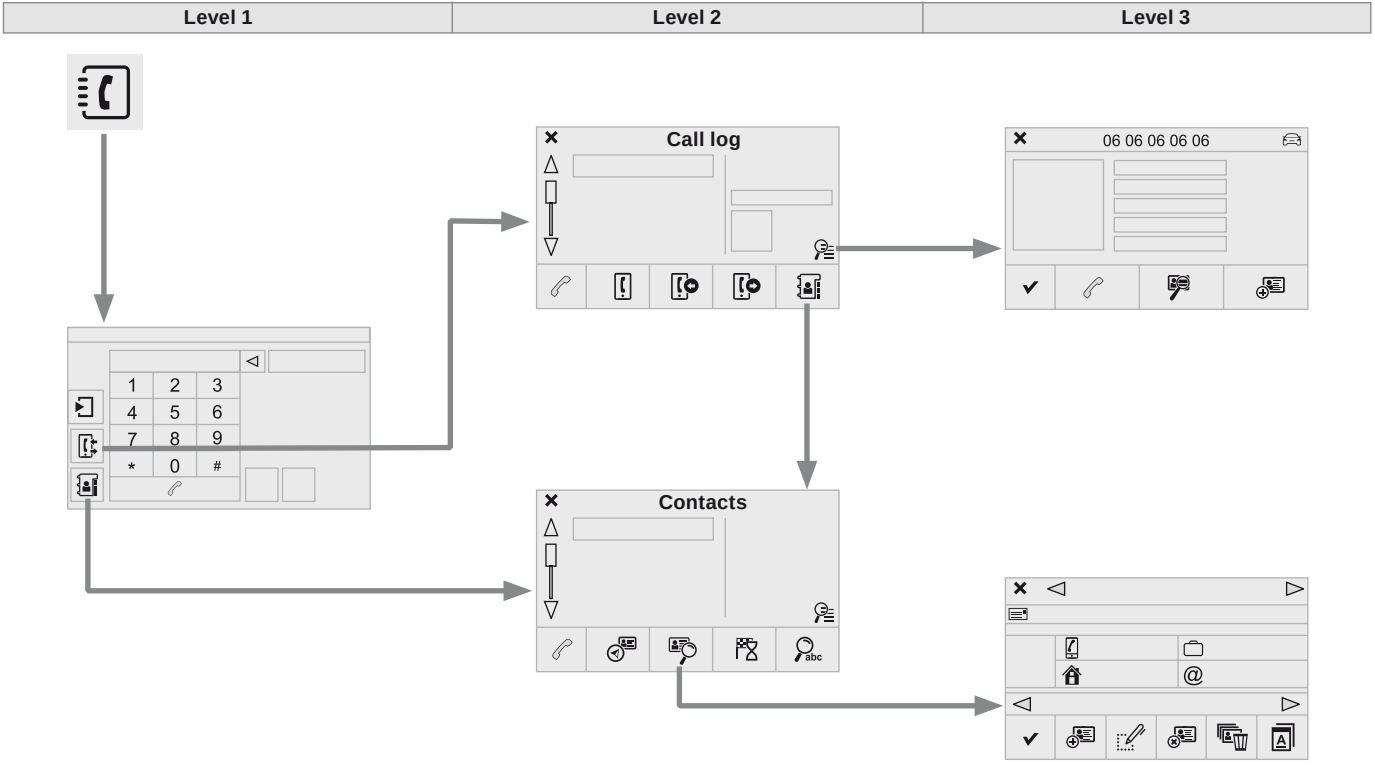
i During the procedure, one or more screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed on connection.

When the telephone menu is displayed, connection of the USB cable causes the display to automatically change to CarPlay mode.
When another menu is displayed, on connection of a USB cable a message is displayed in the upper bar, indicating that CarPlay mode has been activated.
Press Open to display CarPlay mode.

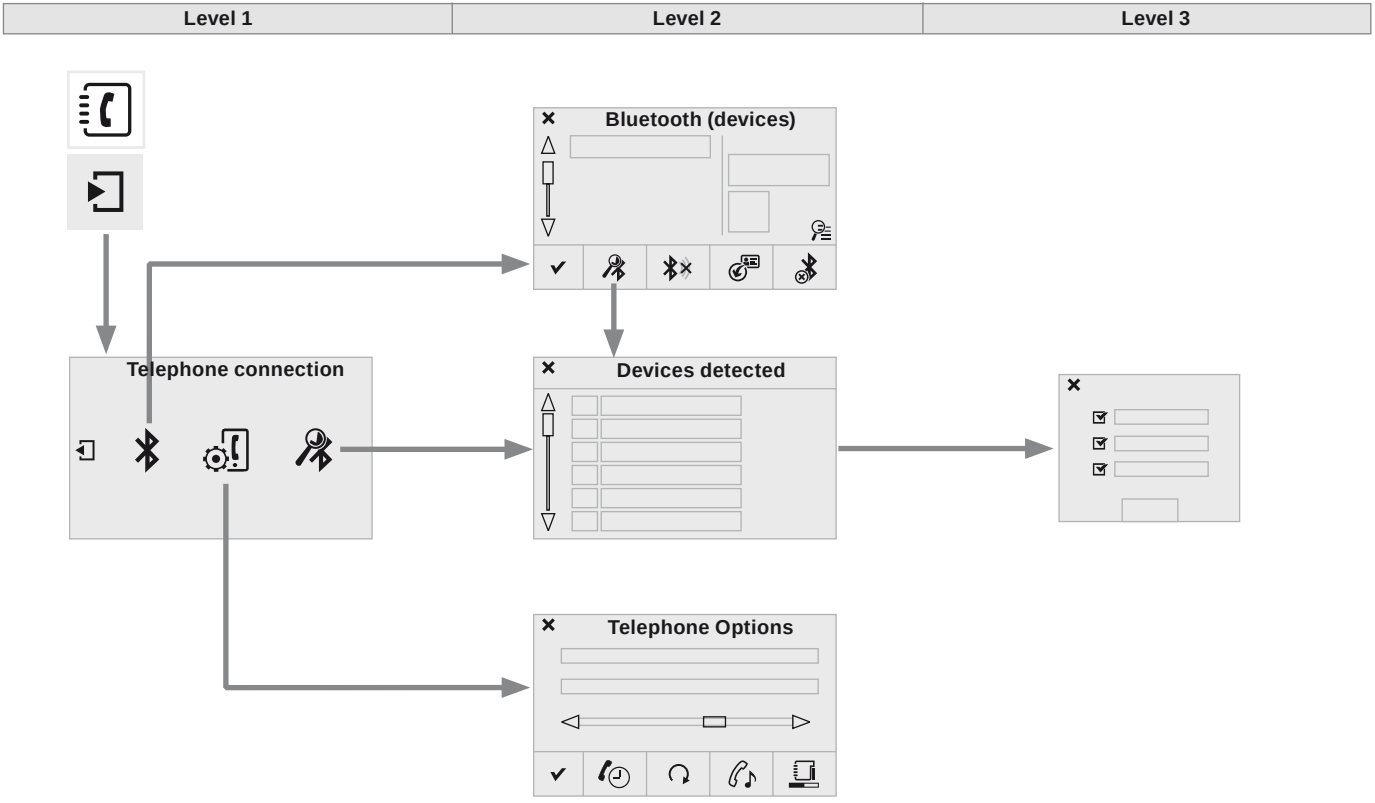
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Telephone


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Call log
06 06 06 06 06
1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9
* 0 #
Contacts
abc

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone → Call log		All calls			After making choices, start the call.
			Incoming calls			
			Outgoing calls			
			Contacts			
			Magnifying glass		View	
					Create	
			Call			
	Telephone → Contacts		Addresses			After making choices, start the call.
			View		Create	
					Modify	
					Delete	
					Delete all	
					By name	
				✔	Confirm	
			Navigate to			
			Search for contact			
			Call			


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Bluetooth (devices)
Telephone connection
Devices detected
Telephone Options

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Bluetooth connection		Search			Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.
			Connect / Disconnect			Start or stop the Bluetooth® connection to the selected peripheral device.
			Update			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.
			Delete			Delete the selected telephone.
		✔	Confirm			Save the settings.
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Search for devices			☑	Telephone	Start the search for peripheral devices.
			Devices detected	☑	Audio streaming	
				☑	Internet	
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Telephone Options		Put on hold			Cut the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.
			Update			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save then in the audio system.
			Ringtones			Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Memory info.			Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth® contacts.
		✔	Confirm			Save the settings.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth® mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Procedure (short) from the telephone

In the Bluetooth® menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.

Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.

Enter this same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.

Procedure from the system

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth® function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**".

Select "**Search for devices**". The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth® function on your telephone off and then on again.



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and "**Confirm**".

Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then "**Confirm**".

Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.

The system offers to connect the telephone:
- in "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- in "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
- in "**Internet**" (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth® standard).

Select one or more profiles and confirm.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

! The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The three profiles may all connect by default.

Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).



The recognised telephone appears in the list.

Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.

! Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.



If not, select "**Update**".

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part, with (Bluetooth® activated).
To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

Connecting a Bluetooth® peripheral device

Automatic reconnection

On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Manual connection



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripherals.

Select the peripheral to connect.



Press on "**Search for devices**".

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Select the peripheral in the list.



Select "**Search for devices**"

Or



"**Connect / Disconnect**" to start or end the Bluetooth connection with the selected device.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.
Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.



Select "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Call log**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

> It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

Managing contacts / entries



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Contacts**".



Select "**View**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact, observing the "international format".

Or



"**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete all**" to delete all information for the selected contact.



Select "**By name**" to view the list of contacts.

Frequently asked questions

The table below gives answers to the most frequently asked questions on your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The navigation settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The Risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Information" function in the list of guidance criteria.
I receive a Risk areas alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for Risk areas located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk areas. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has completed starting up, so that there is GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press on the "Update list" function in the system to update the list of stations received.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

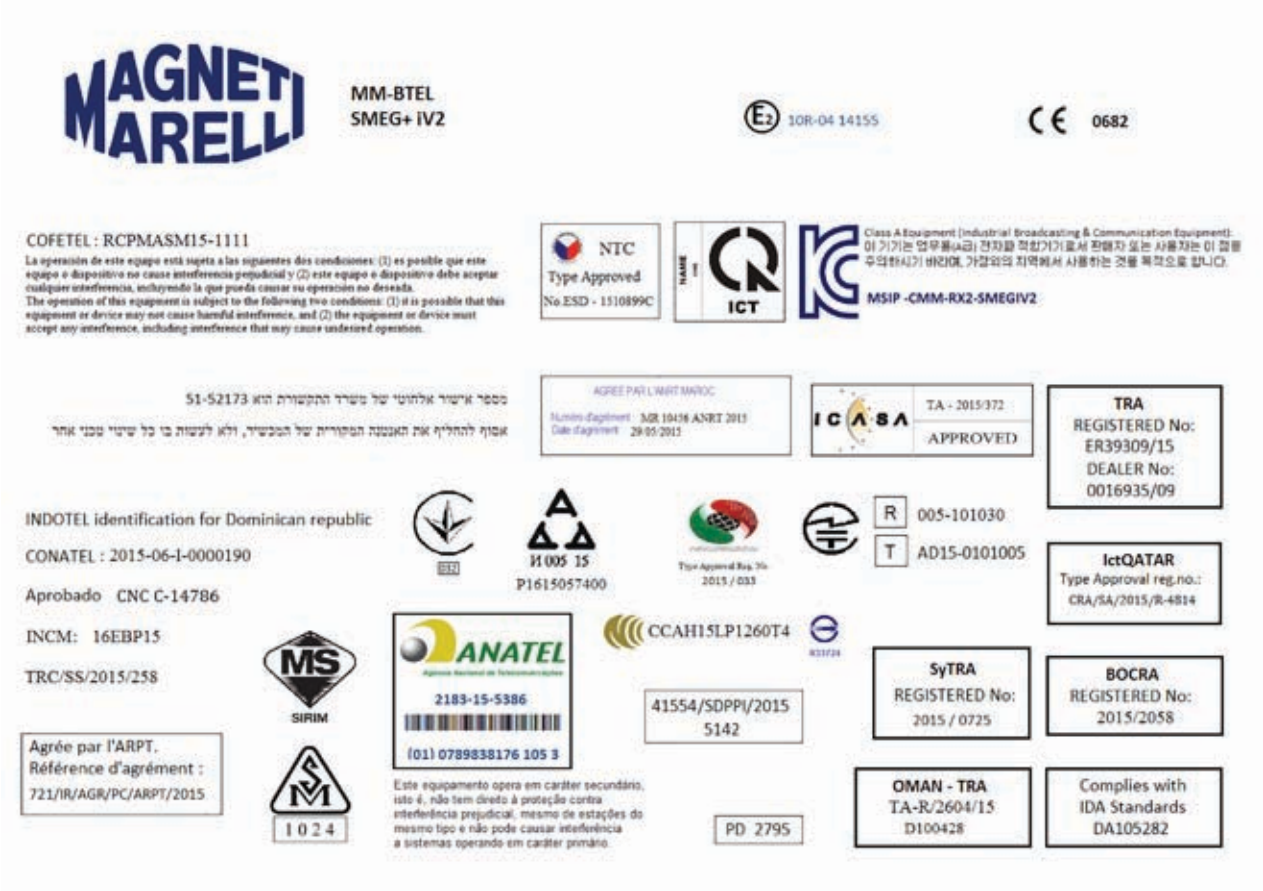
Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing a sound distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
When I select the "All passengers" mode, the distribution is not as I would like.	The choice of an "All passengers" distribution can be programmed.	Modify the distribution setting using the slider on the touch screen.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume:, Bass:, Treble:, Ambience and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings for (Volume:, Bass:, Treble:, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

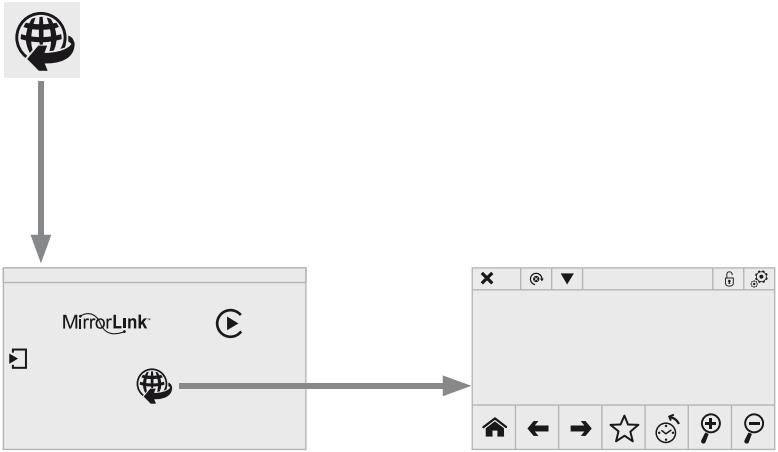
Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "Visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.citroen.co.uk (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down...).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	


MAGNETI MARELLI
MM-BTEL
SMEG+ iV2
E2 10R-04 14155
CE 0682
COFETEL : RCPMASM15-1111
La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.
The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) it is possible that this equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) the equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
NTC
Type Approved
No.ESD - 1510899C
NAME
ICT
Class A Equipment (Industrial Broadcasting & Communication Equipment)
이 기기는 업무용(A급) 전자파 적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.
MSIP -CMM-RX2-SMEGIV2
מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-52173
אסוף להחליף את האנטנה המסורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי מכני אחר
AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 10436 ANRT 2015
Date d'agrément : 29/05/2015
ICASA
TA - 2015/372
APPROVED
TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER39309/15
DEALER No:
0016935/09
INDOTEL identification for Dominican republic
CONATEL : 2015-06-I-0000190
Aprobado CNC C-14786
INCM: 16EBP15
TRC/SS/2015/258
И 005 15
P1615057400
Type Approval Reg. No.
2015 / 033
R 005-101030
T AD15-0101005
IctQATAR
Type Approval reg.no.:
CRA/SA/2015/R-4814
MS
SIRIM
ANATEL
2183-15-5386
(01) 0789838176 105 3
CCAH15LP1260T4
41554/SDPPI/2015
5142
SyTRA
REGISTERED No:
2015 / 0725
BOCRA
REGISTERED No:
2015/2058
Agrée par l'ARPT.
Référence d'agrément :
721/IR/AGR/PC/ARPT/2015
1024
Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.
PD 2795
OMAN - TRA
TA-R/2604/15
D100428
Complies with
IDA Standards
DA105282

Connected services

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Internet browser



Press on **Connected services** to display the primary page.

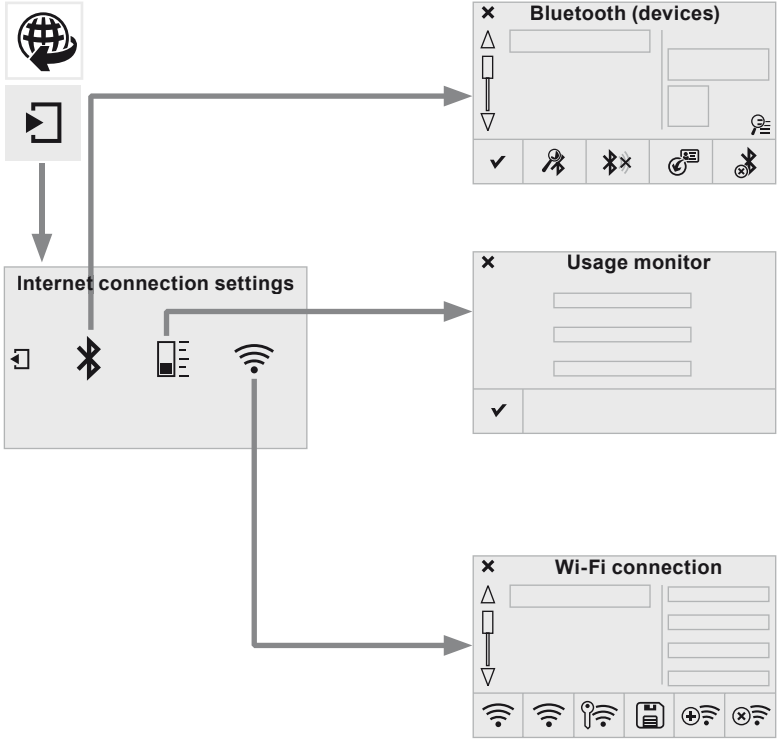


Press on "**Internet browser**" to displays the browser's home page; first connect your smartphone by Bluetooth, option "Internet", see the "**Telephone**" section.

Authentication for Internet browsing via a smartphone is done using the Dial-Up Networking (DUN) standard.

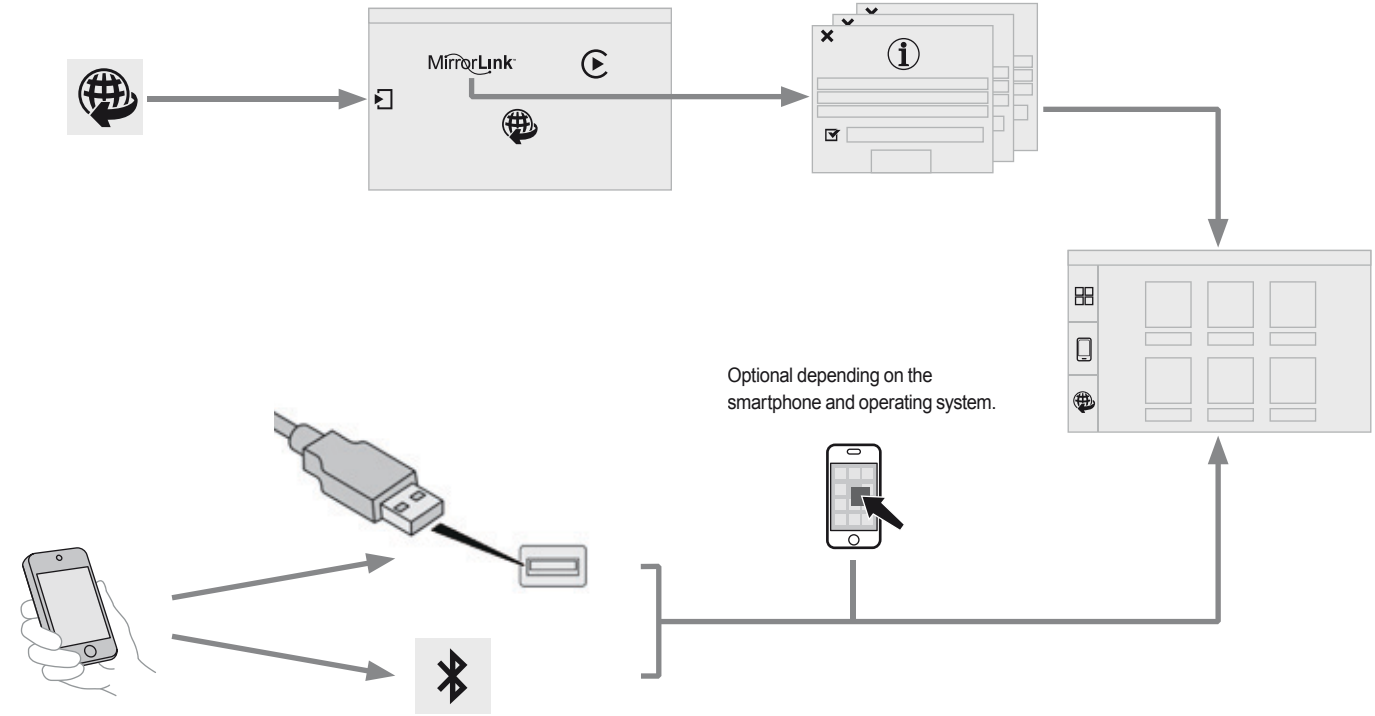
Some smartphones of the latest generation do not support this standard.

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Connected services → Secondary page → Bluetooth connections		**Search**	Start the search for a device to connect.
			Connect/Disconnect	Start or end the Bluetooth connection to the selected device.
			Update	Import contacts from the selected telephone to save them in the audio system.
			Delete	Delete the selected telephone.
		✔	**Confirm**	Save the settings.
	Connected services → Secondary page → Transfer rate		**Reset**	Reset the usage monitor, them confirm.
		✔	**Confirm**	
	Connected services → Secondary page → Wi-Fi connection		**All**	Display all Wi-Fi networks.
			Secure	Display secure Wi-Fi networks.
			Remember	Memorise the selected Wi-Fi network(s).
			Add	Add a new Wi-Fi network.
			On/Off	Activate or deactivate a Wi-Fi network.
			Connect	Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it.

MirrorLink™


MirrorLink
Optional depending on the
smartphone and operating system.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i Please note:
- if your smartphone is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.



Start the application on the smartphone (optional, depending on the smartphone and operating system).

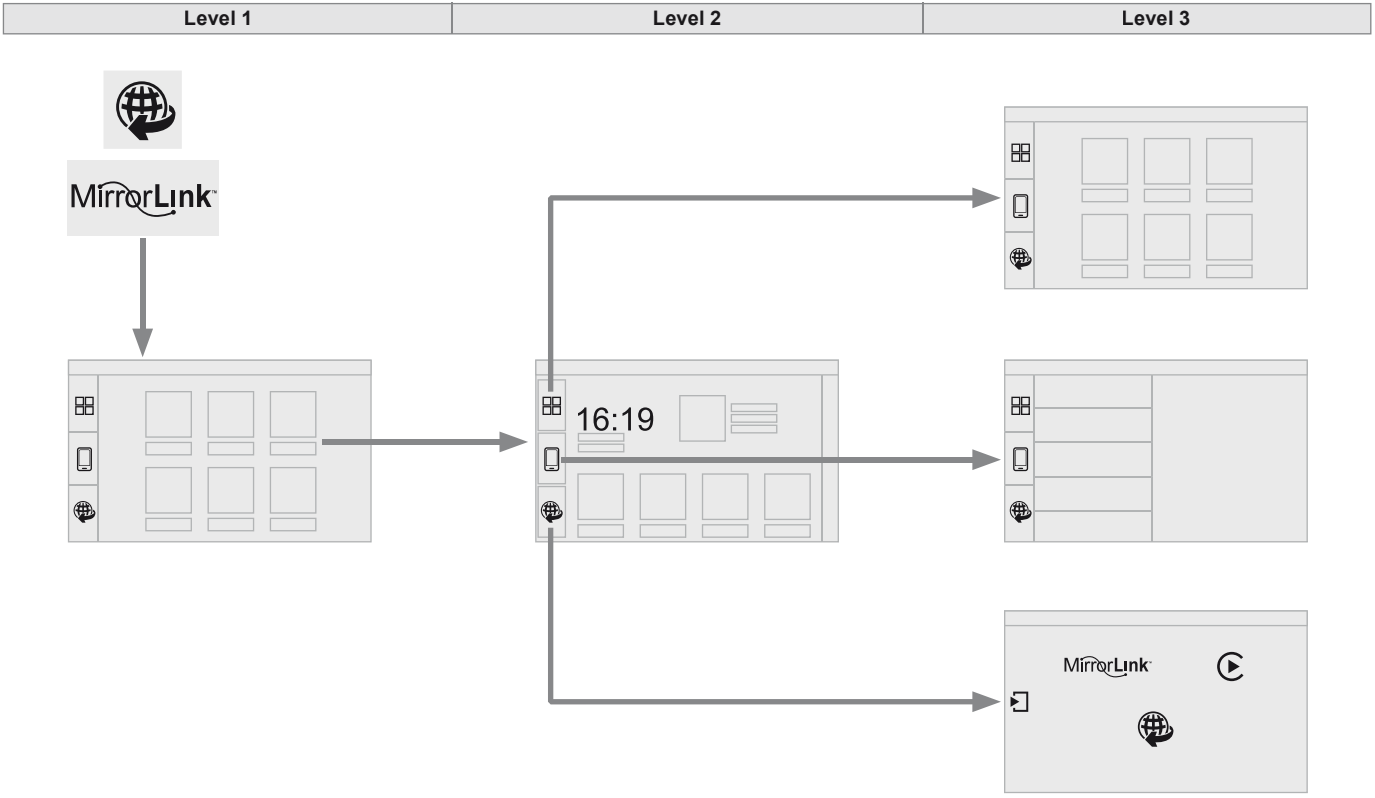
OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

Once connection is established, an page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
If only one application has been downloaded to the smartphone, it starts automatically.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

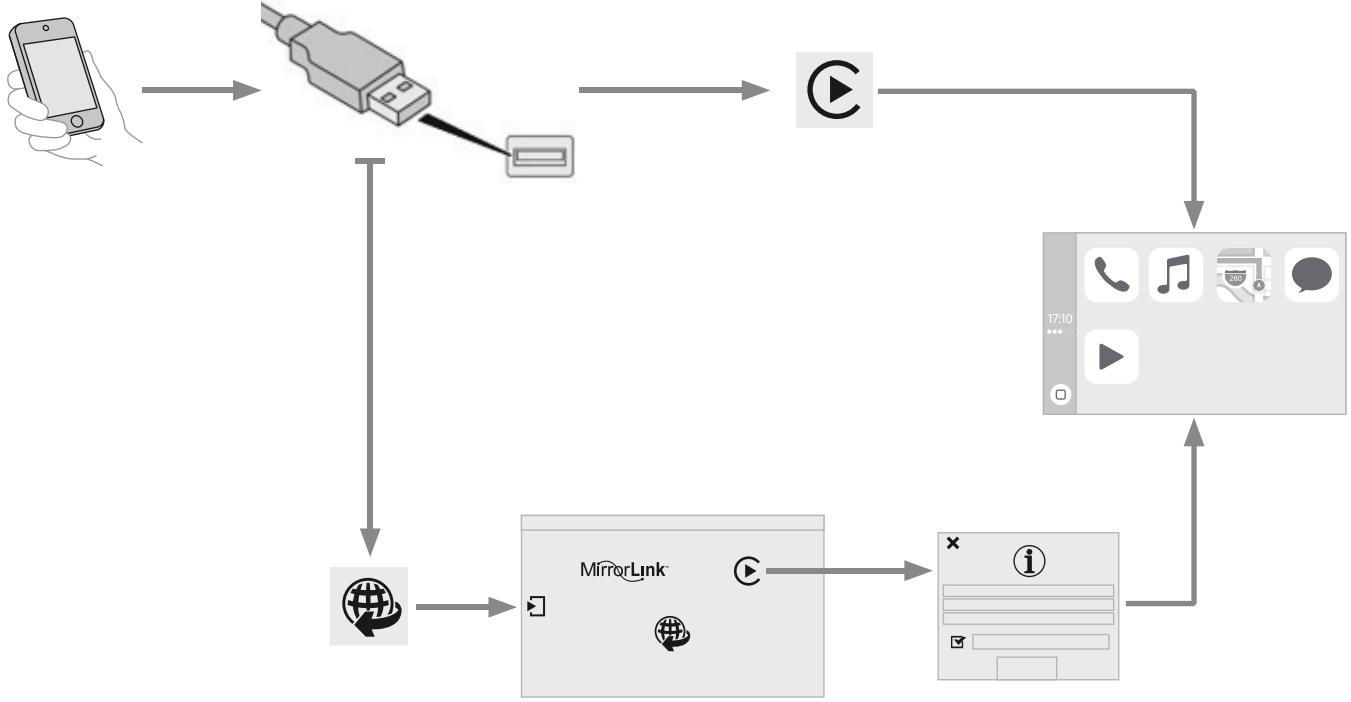
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.
Voice recognition requires a compatible smartphone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
MirrorLink
16:19
MirrorLink

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 	**Connected services** ↓ **MirrorLink™**					Access or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
						Access to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": access or return to the "Car mode" page.
						Access to the "Connected services" primary page.

CarPlay®



CarPlay® smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



On connecting the USB cable, the "**Telephone**" function changes to "**CarPlay**" in the menu carrousel.
Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone is charged while connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.



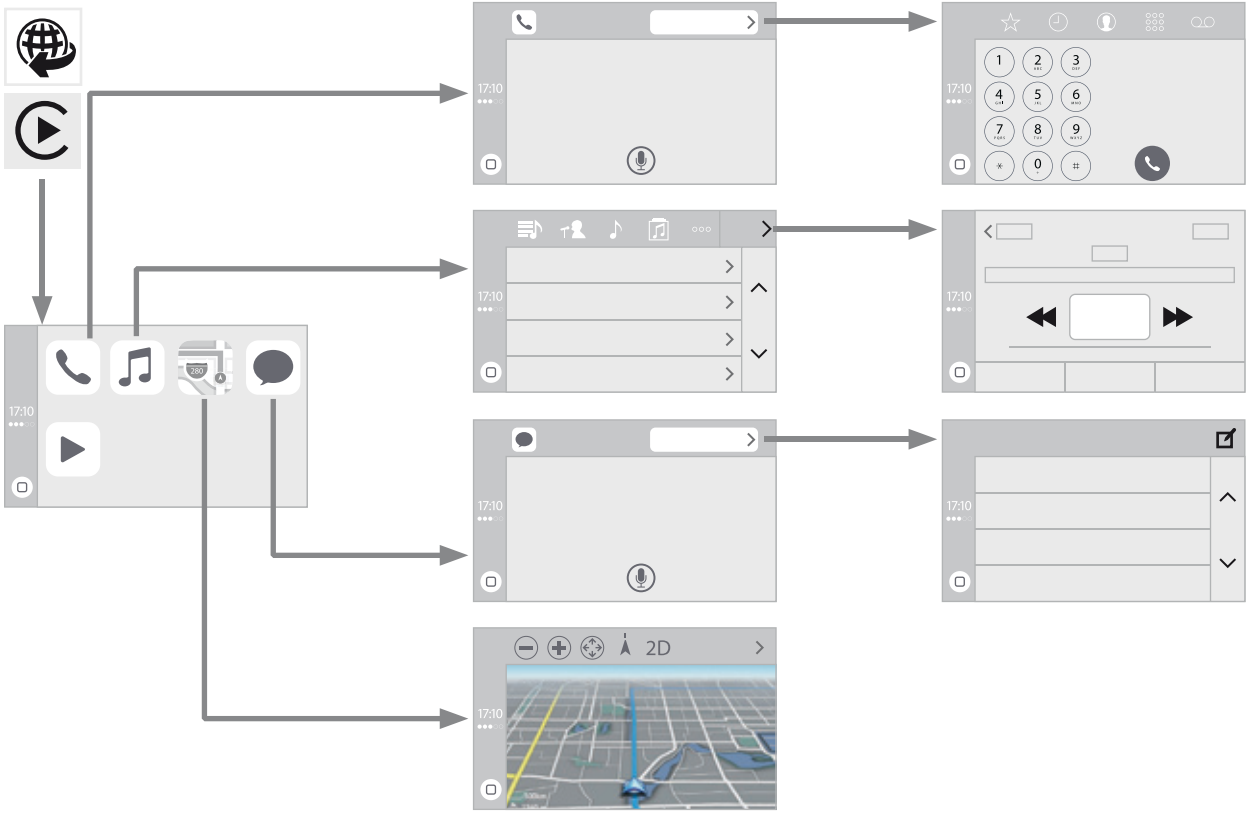
Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

During the procedure, one or more screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed on connection.

Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Connected services ↓ Apple® CarPlay®		Telephone	☆	Favourites	The "Telephone" function is placed automatically in "Siri" voice mode. Press on "Display contacts" for access to the telephone menus.
					Calls	
					Contacts	
					Keypad	
					Messages	
			Music		Lists	Press on "Music" to browse and select the tracks on your smartphone. Press on "Playing" for access to the track currently playing.
					Artists	
					Tracks	
					Albums	
					Other...	
			Plan	›	Destinations	Press on "Destinations" to search for an address by "Siri" voice command or by using the keypad. The GPS function is through the telephone's 3G, 4G or Wi-Fi internet connection.
			Messages	›	Display messages	The "Messages" function is place automatically in "Siri" voice mode to speak the message and the addressee. Press on "Display messages" for access to the messages.
			Playing			Access to the track currently playing.